

BATTLE TASK STANDARDS – INFANTRY

(ENGLISH)

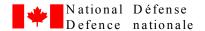
WARNING

ALTHOUGH NOT CLASSIFIED, THIS PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE EXEMPTED FROM DISCLOSURE TO THE PUBLIC UNDER THE ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT. ALL ELEMENTS OF INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN MUST BE CLOSELY SCRUTINIZED TO ASCERTAIN WHETHER OR NOT THE PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE RELEASED.

Issued on authority of the Chief of the Defence Staff



BACK COVER LI	EFT INTENTIO	NALLY BLANK	ζ.
BACK COVER EN			`



BATTLE TASK STANDARDS - INFANTRY

(ENGLISH)

WARNING

ALTHOUGH NOT CLASSIFIED, THIS PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE EXEMPTED FROM DISCLOSURE TO THE PUBLIC UNDER THE ACCESS TO INFORMATION ACT. ALL ELEMENTS OF INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN MUST BE CLOSELY SCRUTINIZED TO ASCERTAIN WHETHER OR NOT THE PUBLICATION, OR ANY PART OF IT, MAY BE RELEASED.

Issued on authority of the Chief of the Defence Staff

OPI: DAT 3 1998-08-15



FOREWORD

Infantry Battle Task Standards, B-GL-383-002/PT-015 (INTERIM), is issued under the authority of Commander Land Force Doctrine and Training System, and is effective upon receipt for use in regular and reserve units. The development of these Battle Task Standards has been in concert with approved doctrine and is part of the Army training strategy to implement a systems approach to collective training. Each battle task outlined in this document provides commanders with common standards against which performance can be measured, and can be used to assist commanders in providing direction and guidance in the planning and conduct of collective training.

Direction for the conduct, evaluation and resource allocation of collective training is contained in Field Training Regulations, B-GL-304-002/PT-001. The Director Army Training is responsible for the content, production and publication of this document. Comments and suggestions are solicited using the format on page iii. Direct your comments and suggestions to the following address:

Director Army Training 3 Land Force Doctrine and Training System PO Box 17000 Station Forces Kingston ON K7K 7B4

W. N. Brough

Colonel

Director Army Training

for Commander Land Force Doctrine and Training System

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

COMMENTS / SUGGESTIONS

BTS	Para	Comment / Suggestion	Provided By
	l	<u>L</u>	<u> </u>

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

INTRODUCTION

ORGANIZATION

1. The role of the infantry is to close with and destroy the enemy. Infantry forces do not operate alone, but perform their missions in close cooperation with other arms, fighting as part of brigade groups, battle groups, combat teams, and company groups. Consequently, Battle Group and Combat Team Battle Task Standards (BTS) will be used to train and evaluate the infantry at the battalion and company level respectively. This BTS publication, on the other hand, lists those tasks performed by mounted or dismounted rifle sections and platoons; the combat support platoons; rifle company tasks not found at the combat team level; and specific tasks for the battalion headquarters. The level of detail provided is intended to assist in standardizing the training and evaluation of tasks performed by regular and reserve infantry units.

TRAINING CONSIDERATIONS

- 2. Although the battle tasks listed in this BTS are those which any infantry company, platoon or section could be required to perform in operations, resource and time constraints will make it impractical to train on each battle task during every training cycle. Before the beginning of the training cycle, company, platoon and section commanders, in conjunction with their higher commander, must identify the high priority battle tasks which they will train for and be evaluated upon during the upcoming training cycle. Factors to be considered in the identification of high priority battle tasks include:
 - a. the higher commander's direction/guidance
 - b. a mission analysis and estimate for any upcoming operations
 - c. the current level of training
 - d. any weaknesses identified as a result of previous evaluations and training
 - e. the length of time since training for each battle task was last conducted
 - f. the introduction of new doctrine or equipment

- g. the resources and time available
- h. any other factors, which the element commander and the higher commander decide, are relevant.
- 3. Once the high priority battle tasks are decided upon, it is the responsibility of the higher commander to ensure the required resources, in accordance with the Field Training Regulations, are made available. Any shortfall in resources should, under normal circumstances, result in an adjustment to the battle tasks to be trained for and evaluated, not a reduction in the standards.

EVALUATION

- 4. A three level evaluation system has been adopted:
 - a. <u>Effective</u>. An 'Effective' (Eff) rating indicates task performance met the standards in all respects
 - b. Needs Practice. A 'Needs Practice' (NPrac) rating indicates only minor shortcomings in task performance which are expected to be corrected in subsequent evaluation iterations with little or no further training required
 - c. <u>Ineffective</u>. An 'Ineffective' (Ineff) rating indicates significant shortcomings in task performance requiring further training before re-evaluation.

NUMBERING

- 5. The BTS have been laid out and numbered by combat function and operation of war or transitional phase, as illustrated in the matrix on page ix. A single letter arm indicator is used as a prefix to each BTS number where appropriate to illustrate Corps or Branch specific tasks. Those BTS listed without an arm indicator refer to BTS common to two or more Corps or Branches. A letter suffix to each BTS number is used to define the unit level for each task element, as listed below:
 - a. A individual (only used in IBTS)
 - b B section / crew / detachment

- c. C platoon / troop
- d. D subunit
- e E combat team
- f. F battalion / regiment / battle group
- g. G brigade group.
- 6. Only those common or Corps specific BTS applicable to the Infantry are tabled in this publication.

APPLICATION

- 7. Note that some BTS can be read as mission statements, while others are tasks or drills, which must be achieved in order to accomplish a specific mission. These tasks and drills are considered significant enough to warrant an evaluation and resource-planning tool.
- 8. For each BTS, some iterations should be performed in the presence of civilians, government organizations, non-government organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the press. Moreover, for each BTS, some iterations should be performed under NBC conditions.

CONCLUSION

9. The BTS contain sufficient detail and are formatted in order that they can be used as the actual marking guide during evaluations. While they are authoritative, they nevertheless still require judgement in application as training must be performance oriented, and performance must be judged on task accomplishment, not just process.

THIS PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK

INFANTRY TASKS LINKED TO COMBAT FUNCTIONS AND OPERATIONS / PHASES OF WAR

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
	COMMAND				
1001	Battle Procedure	X	X	X	X
<u>1002</u>	Establish and Operate a CP	X	X	X	X
	FIREPOWER				
<u>2001</u>	Employ Indirect Fire Support	X	X	X	X
2002	Engage Targets with Main and Secondary Armament	X	X	X	X
<u>I2701</u>	Mortar Platoon Process Call for Fire	X	X	X	X
<u>12702</u>	Mortar Platoon Fires a Final Protective Fire (FPF)	X	X	X	X
<u>12703</u>	Mortar Platoon Fire Simultaneous Missions	X	X	X	X
<u>I2704</u>	Mortar Operates a FSCC	X	X	X	X
<u>12705</u>	Mortar Platoon Occupies a Baseplate Position	X	X	X	X
	INFORMATION OPERATIONS				
3001	Maintain Operations Security	X	X	X	X
3002	Screen	X	X	X	X
3003	Establish and Operate an OP	X	X	X	X
<u>3004</u>	Conduct a Dismounted Recce Patrol	X	X	X	X
3005	Conduct Area Recce	X	X	X	X
<u>3006</u>	Conduct Route / Point Recce	X	X	X	X

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
<u>3007</u>	Conduct Intelligence Operations	X	X	X	X
<u>3011</u>	Conduct an Engineer / Pioneer Recce	X	X	X	X
<u>3012</u>	Recce a Demolition Target	X	X	X	X
<u>3013</u>	Recce a Gap Crossing Site	X	X	X	X
<u>3014</u>	Recce an Enemy Minefield	X	X	X	X
<u>13701</u>	Anti-Armour Platoon Conducts Screen and Flank Security	X	X	X	X
<u>13702</u>	Conduct a Lay Back Patrol	X	X	X	X
	MANOEUVRE				
4001	Attack (Sect / Pl)	X			
<u>4001</u>	Attack (Coy)	X			
4002	Establish a Fire Base	X			
<u>4003</u>	Breakout	X			
4004	Raid	X			
<u>4005</u>	Fight in a Built-up Area (Pl)	X			
<u>4005</u>	Fight in a Built-up Area (Coy)	X			
<u>4006</u>	Woods Clearing	X			
<u>4007</u>	Ambush	X			
4011	Engineers / Pioneers Support an Attack on a Fortified Position	X			
<u>I4071</u>	Clear Trench System	X			
<u>I4072</u>	Clear Bunker	X			
<u>I4073</u>	Conduct Airmobile Operations	X			
<u>I4074</u>	Conduct Sniper Mission	X	X	X	

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
<u>4101</u>	Defend		X		
4102	Guard a Reserved Demolition		X		
<u>4103</u>	Defend in a Built-up Area (Pl)		X		
<u>4103</u>	Defend in a Built-up Area (Coy)		X		
4201	Delay			X	
<u>4202</u>	Guard			X	
<u>4301</u>	Advance to Contact				X
4302	Passage of Lines				X
4303	Breach Obstacles (refer to Cbt Tm BTS)				X
4304	Bypass				X
4305	Consolidate				X
<u>4306</u>	Infiltrate				X
4307	Link-up				X
4308	Move Tactically				X
4309	Occupy Assembly Area / Harbour / Hide				X
<u>4310</u>	Conduct a Convoy Escort				X
4311	Relief in Place				X
4312	Withdrawal				X
4313	Break Contact				X
4315	Establish a Traffic Control Post				X
<u>4316</u>	Conduct Road Movement				X
4321	Support an Assault Boat Crossing				X

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
<u>4322</u>	Breach Minefield Manually				X
4323	Construct an Elevated Cable System				X
4324	Construct a Combat Road				X
4325	Construct a Snow / Ice Road and / or an Ice Bridge				X
<u>4326</u>	Construct a Helicopter Landing Site				X
<u>I4371</u>	Pioneer Section Constructs Improvised Water Crossing Devices				X
	PROTECTION				
<u>5001</u>	Cross a Contaminated Area	X	X	X	X
<u>5002</u>	Decontaminate	X	X	X	X
5003	Conduct NBC Survey	X	X	X	X
<u>5004</u>	Defend Against Air Attack	X	X	X	X
<u>5005</u>	React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire	X	X	X	X
<u>5006</u>	React to Ambush	X	X	X	X
5007	Self-Extraction from Scatterable Mines (refer to Cbt Tm BTS)	X	X	X	X
<u>5008</u>	Deny Equipment and Supplies	X	X	X	X
<u>5009</u>	Establish a Roadblock / Checkpoint	X	X	X	X
<u>5011</u>	Construct a Wire Obstacle	X	X	X	X
<u>5013</u>	Lay / Lift a Protective Minefield	X	X	X	X
<u>5014</u>	Lay a Nuisance Minefield	X	X	X	X
<u>5015</u>	Execute a Crater Obstacle	X	X	X	X
<u>5016</u>	Construct an Abatis	X	X	X	X

BTS	TASK	OFF	DEF	DELAY	TRANS
<u>5017</u>	Fire a Prepared Demolition	X	X	X	X
<u>5018</u>	Set Booby Traps	X	X	X	X
<u>5019</u>	Clear Booby Traps	X	X	X	X
<u>5020</u>	Prepare a Site for FIBUA	X	X	X	X
<u>5021</u>	Construct a Shelter	X	X	X	X
<u>5201</u>	Pioneer Platoon Provides Explosive Assistance to Digging	X	X	X	X
	SUSTAINMENT				
<u>6001</u>	Coordinate Integral CSS	X	X	X	X
<u>6002</u>	Conduct Personnel Administration	X	X	X	X
<u>6003</u>	Treat and Evacuate Casualties	X	X	X	X
6004	Handle PWs / Detainees	X	X	X	X
6005	Provide Integral Transportation Services	X	X	X	X
<u>6006</u>	Conduct Delivery Point Operations	X	X	X	X
6007	Provide Integral Maintenance Services	X	X	X	X
6008	Respond to a Repair / Recovery Request	X	X	X	X
6009	Provide Integral Supply Services	X	X	X	X
<u>6010</u>	Provide Food Services	X	X	X	X
<u>6011</u>	Conduct Running / Battle Resupply	X	X	X	X
<u>6021</u>	Construct a Non-Standard Bridge	X	X	X	X

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
FOREWORD	i
COMMENTS / SUGGESTIONS	iii
INTRODUCTION	v
INFANTRY TASKS LINKED TO COMBAT FUNCTIONS A OPERATIONS / PHASES OF WAR	
COMMAND	1
1001 B/C/D - BATTLE PROCEDURE	1
1002 D/F - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A COMMAND POST	8
FIREPOWER	14
2001 D - EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE SUPPORT	14
2002 B/C/D - ENGAGE TARGETS WITH MAIN AND SECONDARY ARMAMENT	16
I2701 C - PROCESS CALL FOR FIRE	19
I2702 C - FIRES A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE	23
I2703 C - FIRE SIMULTANEOUS MISSIONS	25
12704 C - OPERATES A FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION CENTRE	28
12705 C - OCCUPIES A BASEPLATE POSITION	31
INFORMATION OPERATIONS	35
3001 B/C/D - MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY	35
3002 C/D - SCREEN	39
3003 B - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE AN OBSERVATION POST	42
3004 B - CONDUCT A DISMOUNTED RECONNAISSANCE PATROL	45
3005 C - CONDUCT AREA RECONNAISSANCE	50

	3006 C - CONDUCT ROUTE / POINT RECONNAISSANCE	54
	3007 F - CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS	
	3011 B - CONDUCT ENGINEER / PIONEER	. 50
	RECONNAISSANCE	. 61
	3012 B - RECONNOITRE A DEMOLITION TARGET	. 65
	3013 B - RECONNOITRE A GAP CROSSING SITE	. 67
	3014 B - RECONNOITRE AN ENEMY MINEFIELD	. 69
	13701 C - CONDUCTS SCREEN AND FLANK SECURITY	. 73
	I3702 C - CONDUCT A LAY BACK PATROL	. 77
V	IANOUEVRE	. 81
О	FFENSIVE OPERATIONS	. 81
	4001 B/C - ATTACK	. 81
	4001 D - ATTACK	. 84
	4002 B/C - ESTABLISH A FIRE BASE	. 87
	4003 C/D - BREAKOUT	. 90
	4004 C/D - RAID	. 93
	4005 C - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA)	. 99
	4005 D - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA)	104
	4006 C - WOODS CLEARING	109
	4007 C/D - AMBUSH	116
	4011 C - SUPPORT AN ATTACK ON A	
	FORTIFIED POSITION	124
	I4071 C - CLEAR TRENCH SYSTEM	129
	I4072 C - CLEAR BUNKER	134
	I4073 C/D - CONDUCT AIRMOBLIE OPERATIONS	139
	I4074 B - CONDUCT SNIPER MISSION	145
D	EFENSIVE OPERATIONS	149
	4101 B/C/D - DEFEND	149

4102 C/D - GUARD A RESERVED DEMOLITION	156
4103 C - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA	161
4103 D - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA	167
DELAY	174
4201 C/D - DELAY	174
4202 C/D - GUARD	178
TRANSITIONAL OPERATIONS	181
4301 B/C/D - ADVANCE TO CONTACT	181
4302 C/D - PASSAGE OF LINES	183
4304 D - BYPASS	190
4305 C/D - CONSOLIDATE	192
4306 C/D - INFILTRATE	196
4307 C - LINK-UP	200
4308 B/C/D - MOVE TACTICALLY	204
4309 C/D - OCCUPY ASSEMBLY AREA / HARBOUR / HIDE	211
4310 C/D - CONDUCT A CONVOY ESCORT	219
4311 C/D - RELIEF IN PLACE	224
4312 C/D - WITHDRAWAL	228
4313 B/C - BREAK CONTACT	232
4315 B - ESTABLISH A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST	235
4316 D/F - CONDUCT ROAD MOVEMENT	238
4321 C - SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING	245
4322 C - BREACH MINEFIELD MANUALLY	248
4323 C - CONTRUCT AN ELEVATED CABLE SYSTEM	254
4324 C - CONSTRUCT A COMBAT ROAD	256
4325 C - CONSTRUCT A SNOW/ICE ROAD AND / OR AN ICE BRIDGE	260

4326 B/C - CONTRUCT A HELICOPTER LANDING SITE	268
I4371 B - CONSTRUCTS IMPROVISED WATER CROSSING DEVICES	271
PROTECTION	272
5001 D - CROSS A CONTAMINATED AREA	272
5002 B/C/D - DECONTAMINATE	275
5003 B - CONDUCT NBC SURVEY	
5004 B/C - DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK	282
5005 B/C - REACT TO CONTACT / DIRECT FIRE / INDIRECT FIRE	286
5006 B/C - REACT TO AMBUSH	291
5008 C/D - DENY EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES	294
5009 B/C/D - ESTABLISH A ROADBLOCK / CHECKPOINT	297
5011 B/C - CONSTRUCT A WIRE OBSTACLE	302
5013 B/C - LAY / LIFT A PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD	306
5014 B - LAY A NUISANCE MINEFIELD	313
5015 B - EXECUTE A CRATER OBSTACLE	317
5016 B - CONSTRUCT AN ABATIS	322
5017 B - FIRE A PREPARED DEMOLITION	327
5018 B - SET BOOBY TRAPS	329
5019 B - CLEAR BOOBY TRAPS	332
5020 B/C - PREPARE A SITE FOR FIBUA	338
5021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A SHELTER	343
5201 B - PROVIDES EXPLOSIVE ASSISTANCE TO DIGGING	348
SUSTAINMENT	350
6001 D - COORDINATE INTEGRAL COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT	350

6002 B - CONDUCT PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION	352
6003 B/C/D - TREAT AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES	356
6004 D - HANDLE PRISONERS OF WAR (PW) / DETAINEES	359
6005 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL TRANSPORTATION SERVICES	363
6006 D - CONDUCT DELIVERY POINT (DP) OPERATIONS	365
6007 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL MAINTENANCE SERVICES	368
6008 B - RESPOND TO A REPAIR / RECOVERY REQUEST	371
6009 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL SUPPLY SERVICES	375
6010 C - PROVIDE FOOD SERVICES	377
6011 C/D - CONDUCT RUNNING / BATTLE RESUPPLY	379
6021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A NON-STANDARD BRIDGE (NSB)	381

COMMAND

1001 B/C/D - BATTLE PROCEDURE

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is conducting tactical operations. A new mission is received requiring the element to prepare a warning order and orders. Offensive, defensive, delay or transitional operations by day or night under NBC conditions may be involved. Civilians, government organizations, non-government organizations, private voluntary organizations, and the press could be present in the area of operations. Depending on the nature and complexity of the mission, and the time available, some steps may be abbreviated.

TASK STANDARD:

The element commander develops a plan which follows the higher commander's intent, makes maximum effective use of time, is issued to subordinate commanders using less than one third the time available, is clearly understood by subordinate commanders and accomplishes the assigned mission.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards				
1. achiev		ents of battle procedure, which must be			
:	a.	use of standard groups:			
		(1) orders group			
		(2) reconnaissance group			
1	b.	reconnaissance party			
	c.	concurrent activity at all levels.			
2.	If the	fast pace of combat precludes the conduct of			

	Sub	-Task	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	a full estimate, the element commander should conduct a combat estimate, or immediately react to the situation:						
a.			lysis - clarify the higher 's intent and tasks assigned				
b.			nsider each approach, left, ight using COPPED:				
	(1)	Cove	r				
	(2)	Obsta	acles				
	(3)	Posit	ions for fire				
	(4)	Posit	ions for observation				
	(5)	Enem	ny				
	(6)	Dista	nce				
c.	plan -	simpl	e, bold, aggressive				
d.	orders	s:					
	(1)	stand	ard sequence, or				
	(2)	battle	orders:				
		(a)	platoon - terrain, enemy, mission, execution				
		(b)	section - group, enemy, task, move order.				
3. If time permits, the following detailed steps for battle procedure are followed:							
a.		1) The	e commander receives a er				

	Sub	-Tasks	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
b.	the co		on receipt of a warning order, der conducts a quick map study mate			
c.			commander receives orders her commander:			
	(1)	seeks	clarification as required			
	(2)	coord	inates with staff			
d.		4) The	e commander conducts a ysis:			
	(1)	comm	fies the higher (two-up) nanders' intent and immediate ior's concept of operations			
	(2)	identi	fies assigned and implied tasks			
	(3)	identi relate	fies limitations which may to:			
		(a)	time			
		(b)	space			
		(c)	resources			
		(d)	the way the mission will be executed			
		(e)	political restrictions (if applicable)			
		(f)	if applicable, the open fire policy and / or rules of engagement (ROE)			
	(4)		nuously determines if the ion has changed sufficiently to			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		warrant a review of the estimate			
	(5)	identifies essential tasks and produces a restated mission			
	(6)	(Step 5) The commander issues the initial warning order immediately or as soon as possible, stating as a minimum:			
	(7)	the probable task			
	(8)	the location and time for orders			
	(9)	the degree of warning or earliest time of movement of the main body (eg. no move before)			
	(10)	any restrictions on reconnaissance			
	(11)	any special administrative instructions affecting the resting or feeding of troops, regrouping, issue of ammunition, need for special equipment, moves to assembly areas, etc			
	(12)	ack			
e.	time e	6) The commander makes a detailed estimate, leaving two thirds of the able time for subordinates to conduct own battle procedure			
f.		7) The commander conducts a map and prepares an outline plan			
g.		8) The commander prepares a naissance plan:			

	Sub	-Tasks	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(1)		fies questions to be answered at location and en route			
	(2)		the ground from the enemy's ective, security permitting			
	(3)	consid	ders:			
		(a)	the threat			
		(b)	time available			
		(c)	number of locations to be visited			
		(d)	routes available			
		(e)	necessity for a protection party			
h.	the re	connai	reconnaissance party conducts ssance IAW the plan, but may be made as necessary			
i.			e commander completes the f the estimate			
j.	(Step 11) The commander issues a supplementary warning order, confirming information in the initial warning order and adding new information as necessary					
k.			e commander completes the epares and issues orders:			
	(1)		s orders at the time stated in the ng order			
	(2)	that re	es orders are given at a location educes travel time and if ole allows observation of the			

Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	zone/sector and promotes OPSEC			
(3)	enhances presentation of orders through the use of visual aids, time permitting (eg. terrain models, diagrams, etc)			
(4)	ensures key personnel attend O Gp and are seated logically			
(5)	introduces newly attached commanders			
(6)	uses the proper format for orders			
(7)	christens the ground			
(8)	if the orders are complex, holds a short talk-through of the task execution at the start of the orders 'execution' paragraph (Concept of Operations)			
(9)	identifies the higher commander's intent			
(10)	clearly states element's mission and tasks of subordinates IAW mission analysis			
(11)	ensures there is no repetition of instructions unless it is vital to clarify a task			
(12)	confirms subordinate commanders understand their instructions			
(13)	issues all supporting documentation necessary to coordinate the task			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(14) ensures subordinate commanders perform lateral coordination before leaving			
1.	(Step 13) The commander coordinates the activities and requirements of subordinates, including rehearsals if time and situation permit			
m.	(Step 14) The commander supervises the deployment, taking appropriate and timely action to rectify any problems			
n.	(Step 15) Mission is executed IAW orders.			

1002 D/F - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE A COMMAND POST

ELEMENT: COY / BN

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

This task includes all elements within a company / battalion HQ. To be properly exercised, the CP and HQ personnel must be present, and the CP should be deployed as part of an FTX. This task is performed day and night in all weather conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The CP is established, and re-established following each move, taking into account all siting and security factors. The CP facilitates the effective control of unit and subunit operations through the maintenance of continuous voice and data communications with required internal and external elements, and the maintenance of all orders, maps, messages, and other supporting documentation / records.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The CP is sited taking into consideration the			
following factors:			
a. site selected permits good communications with higher headquarters and subordinate elements, without need for an RRB station and CP is screened from enemy EW devices			
b. CP is concealed, making best use of wooded areas and villages. Isolated or predictable cover is avoided			
c. physical protection, particularly from artillery, is provided			
d. security/defence of the CP is provided, either by integral HQ personnel or by co-			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		location with another element of the unit			
	e.	site is accessible by wheeled vehicles, preferably with a covered final approach.			
	lex is c	n suitable and / or available, a mobile CP quickly deployed, providing a work area for der and the various staff cells in the HQ.			
techn	ded for	munications configuration is established and the CP complex, meeting all operational and quirements, including a remote capability ble.			
4.	CP es	stablishes and maintains communication:			
	a.	upon initial deployment, CP establishes communication on appropriate radio nets and completes all communications checks			
	b.	communications are maintained with all subordinate elements and higher HQ stations without interruption			
	c.	only approved radio telephone procedures are used			
	d.	CP encodes all critical messages without error			
	e.	CP decodes all messages without error			
	f.	CP keeps transmissions to 15 seconds or less			
	g.	CP uses challenge and reply authentication IAW SOP without error			
	h.	electronic silence is observed as directed in orders			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	i.	radio silence is observed as directed in orders			
	j.	lowest possible power settings and directional antennas are used when possible			
	k.	CP continues to communicate while the enemy attempts to jam communications			
	1.	MIJI reports are submitted within 5 minutes after attempted jamming.			
5.	CP se	ecurity is established and maintained:			
	a.	during HQ moves, the reconnaissance party is in place before the main body with CP arrives			
	b.	all-round protection is provided			
	c.	communications are continuously maintained with higher and subordinate HQ to provide early warning of enemy contacts in the immediate vicinity			
	d.	security measures are upgraded, such as placement of concertina around the CP complex and installation of early warning devices			
	e.	generators and vehicle engines are turned off during alarms			
	f.	Duty Officer (DO) gathers all classified documents and is prepared to destroy them if in danger of capture			
	g.	CP interior lights go red at night.			
6.	The C	CP always has a DO present who:			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	a.	understands the current battle situation and the current passwords, critical code words and nicknames			
	b.	knows the location of all HQ officers.			
7. quali		CP has a minimum of one communications dividual who:			
	a.	with the DO, mans the nets and logs all traffic			
	b.	keeps all COMSEC material current			
	c.	immediately diagnoses and corrects any technical fault			
	d.	provides technical maintenance			
	e.	provides electrical power distribution.			
8.	Order Order	rs and instructions are available for:			
	a.	unit SOPs			
	b.	formation SOPs (Bn only)			
	c.	CEOIs			
	d.	higher headquarters and own orders.			
9. infor		CP maintains currency of the following as applicable:			
	a.	order of battle and location state			
	b.	officer location board			
	c.	DO roster			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	d.	SDS schedule, if applicable			
	e.	radio diagrams and address groups			
	f.	code word and nickname lists			
	g.	passwords			
	h.	CP files including own operations log, higher operations log, in and out messages, and INTREPs/INTSUMs, as applicable			
	i.	critical equipment states			
	j.	administrative reports and returns			
	k.	ack register (Bn CP)			
	1.	defence diagram for the CP area			
	m.	master Battle Map in the CP vehicle, and Information and briefing map in working area of the CP, complete with applicable overlays (Bn CP).			
10. Outgoing DO briefs the incoming DO properly and ensures that the current situation is understood to the satisfaction of both.					
11.	11. Step-up procedures are employed to maintain communications during the move of the CP:				
	a.	moves are anticipated, general locations selected, and new sites are reconnoitred			
	b.	the step-up CP receives a copy of the most recent orders, etc			
	c.	the step-up CP is manned and equipped to operate alone for a prolonged period			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
d.	the CP continues to operate until the step- up is in location and has established communications			
e.	the step-up CP assumes control through use of appropriate code words and voice procedure			
f.	moves are made quickly, in order to permit the HQ to re-group as soon as possible.			

FIREPOWER

2001 D - EMPLOY INDIRECT FIRE SUPPORT

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company is operating as part of a larger unit. Both enemy and friendly forces have indirect fire and close air support (CAS) available.

TASK STANDARD:

The company commander, FOO (if available) and fire controller (FC) plan and execute indirect fire that supports the higher commander's plan, and covers likely enemy approaches and key terrain. Friendly fire does not cause friendly casualties.

Sub-Tasks and Standards			NPrac	Ineff
	ompany commander, FOO, and FC make a support plan:			
a.	develop a fire support plan in concert with the higher commander's plans, guidance and intent in all operations			
b.	integrate the FOO and FC to ensure they are in position to execute tasks			
c.	augment the fire of the higher HQ's fire support plan IAW the higher HQ commander's guidance to ensure indirect fire is planned in depth, including the illumination plan for all ranges and weapons			
d.	consider deception plan			
e.	establish recorded targets on likely enemy			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards						
		approaches					
	f.	submit proposed fire plan to higher for approval.					
2.	Rece	ive approved fire plan and distribute.					
3.	Execute fire support plan:						
	a.	all available supporting direct and indirect fire is synchronized and executed in a timely manner, and accomplishes the desired result IAW the fire plan, or the commander's requests					
	b.	fire support priorities are adjusted as the battle progresses.					

2002 B/C/D - ENGAGE TARGETS WITH MAIN AND SECONDARY ARMAMENT

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is operating independently or as part of a larger force. The element commander plans and coordinates direct fire. Main and secondary armament must be used to engage static and moving targets while stationary and on the move, under all types of visibility and environmental conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The element engages targets IAW the assigned mission. Weapon crews must effectively boresight, zero, and complete misfire drills on main armament, coaxial machine guns, and on ground mounted weapon systems. The element must successfully achieve engagement time and accuracy standards for predeployment and for minimum level of capability (MLOC) standards defined in applicable weapons manuals.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	Elen	nent commander develops a direct fire plan:			
	a.	coordinated with higher HQ			
	b.	integrated with flanking units			
	c.	planned in depth for all ranges and weapons			
	d.	establish recorded targets on likely enemy approaches.			
2.	2. Element commander informs subordinate commanders of the direct fire plan.				
3.	The	element executes the direct fire plan:			

	Sub	-Tasks	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a.	all ava	all available direct fire is synchronized to achieve the desired result:				
	(1)		ents occupy firing positions no han the time specified in orders			
		(a)	provide mutual support			
		(b)	are not easily identified by map reconnaissance			
		(c)	are covered and concealed from ground and air observation			
		(d)	have covered and concealed routes in and out			
		(e)	provide enfilade fire from defilade positions			
		(f)	allow applicable stand-off ranges			
		(g)	are clear of obstructions along the line of sight			
		(h)	have alternate and secondary positions sited, if possible			
	(2)	_	priorities are adjusted as the progresses			
b.	fire ar	nd shift	fire as required until:			
	(1)	ordere	ed to cease the attack, or			
	(2)	the en	emy withdraws out of range, or			
	(3)	the en	emy is destroyed or			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		suppressed.			
4.	Crew	rs effectively boresight and zero:			
	a.	main armament			
	b.	coaxial machine gun			
	c.	ground mounted weapon systems.			
5.	Crew	s effectively complete misfire drills:			
	a.	main armament			
	b.	coaxial machine gun			
	c.	ground mounted weapon systems.			
I	6. Crews successfully achieve the engagement time and accuracy standards IAW applicable weapon manuals:				
	a.	predeployment standard			
	b.	MLOC standard.			

12701 C - PROCESS CALL FOR FIRE

ELEMENT: MOR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The mortar platoon groups have moved to new firing positions. The fire controller (FC) with a manoeuvre subunit receives a call for fire from the subunit and calls for fire from the assigned mortar group. The group control post operator (CPO) initiates the fire. The battalion fire support coordination centre (FSCC) monitors all calls for fire, including artillery and air, and controls movement of mortar platoon.

TASK STANDARD:

Within two minutes of the call for fire, the FC determines the initial data and relays the request to the assigned mortar group CPO to fire. Subsequent fire commands are issued within 30 seconds after receipt of corrections.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
1. call fo	1. The FC records the call for fire and repeats the call for fire.						
2. assun	2. The FC moves to a position of observation to assume the call for fire from the subunit, if possible.						
3. accep	3. The FSCC determines if the mortar group can accept the fire mission by verifying that:						
	a.	the target is in the unit's area of responsibility					
	b.	the target does not endanger friendly forces					
	c.	the fire request supports the overall mission of the supported unit(s)					
	d.	the required ammunition is available and					

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		does not violate commander's guidance			
	e.	the target does not conflict with any fire support coordination measures			
	f.	if other fire units are available to engage in the mission if required for the target.			
4.	The I	FC issues the order to fire:			
	a.	determines initial firing data, including target description, and sends it to the mortar group CPO within two minutes of the last element of the call for fire			
	b.	determines subsequent corrections within 30 seconds			
	c.	all firing data is recorded			
	d.	data sheet is updated			
	e.	firing data of the FC is confirmed by the CPO:			
		(1) deflection			
		(2) range			
		(3) charge			
		(4) time.			
accor	5. The CPO announces the initial fire command to the mortar line, including all elements necessary for accomplishing the fire mission. The warning order is to include:				
	a.	the size of the fire unit - group or section			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	ammunition and fuse:			
		(1) HE			
		(2) smoke			
		(3) illumination			
		(4) fuse delay			
		(5) fuse SQ			
		(6) fuse time			
	c.	charge			
	d.	bearing			
	e.	elevation			
	f.	command to fire.			
6. and a		mortar line / group / repeats the fire command the correct data on the mortars.			
order	onverte s that h	equent fire orders originate with the FC and ed by the CPO. They are the parts of the nave changed from the initial order given, to eds onto the target and produce effective fire:			
	a.	bearing			
	b.	elevation			
	c.	command to fire.			
8.	Morta	ar group / section fires the rounds:			
	a.	when the rounds are fired, the CPO announces to the FC 'Shot, over'			
	b.	CPO announces the time of flight of the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards					
	rounds					
c.	the FC determines the number and type for rounds fired in the initial call for fire					
d	the CPO repeats para 5 for all subsequent commands until the FC, announces 'End of Mission'					
e.	the CPO records the results of the fire mission, and completes the ammunition portion of the report.					
9. Т	he FSCC:					
a	records the call for fire and passes the target description to higher HQ					
b	passes target results to higher HQ.					

12702 C - FIRES A FINAL PROTECTIVE FIRE

ELEMENT: MOR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

While in a firing position, the mortar platoon receives a request to fire a final protective fire (FPF) already adjusted. One mortar group fires on a subunit FPF, or the mortar platoon fires on a battalion / battle group FPF.

TASK STANDARD:

The mortar platoon initiates accurate FPF within 30 seconds if already laid, or within one minute if not already laid on FPF.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
be re (FSC	1. A Forward Observation Officer (FOO) or Fire Controller (FC) initiates a FPF call for fire. The call may be relayed through the Fire Support Coordination Centre (FSCC) if FOO initiates, or through a Control Post Operator (CPO) if FC initiates:				
	a.	FOO / FC authenticate if code word not used			
	b.	FSCC / CPO transmit designated code word to mortar platoon / group.			
2.	The	mortar platoon / group fires FPF:			
	a.	if already laid on FPF:			
		(1) perform drills to fire as ordered			
		(2) fires within 30 seconds after receipt of FPF request			
		(3) continue firing as prescribed by FOO / FC, or until unit commander, FOO,			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	or FC calls 'End of Mission'						
	b.	if not	already laid on FPF:				
		(1)	perform drill to lay bearing and elevation change				
		(2)	perform drills to fire as ordered				
		(3)	fires within one minute after receipt of FPF request				
	c.	all ro	unds impact on FPF				
	d.	•					
3.	The F	FSCC n	nonitors all above.			ì	

12703 C - FIRE SIMULTANEOUS MISSIONS

ELEMENT: MOR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

In a firing mission, the mortar platoon receives two adjust-fire requests, one immediately after the other. Note that mortar platoon could engage one target from two different group locations.

TASK STANDARD:

The mortar platoon engages both targets with accurate fire for effect (FFE). The platoon engages the enemy or target within the bursting radius for an effective FFE.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The F coordinates				
a.	the Fire Controllers (FC) with the subunits requesting for fire must determine the call for fire and send it to their mortar group Control Post Operator (CPO) as soon as possible after the last element of the call for fire from the subunit			
b.	the FCs must determine subsequent corrections within 30 seconds			
c.	CPOs must record call for fire, or			
d.	the CPO must determine the direction and distance from the firing position to the target, and prepares the initial fire command following the procedures listed at para 2 below. The fire request is authenticated if code word not used			
e.	the FSCC determines if the group could			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
		accep	t the fire mission by verifying that:				
		(1)	the target is in the mortar platoon's area of responsibility				
		(2)	the target does not endanger friendly forces				
		(3)	the fire mission supports the overall mission of the manoeuvre element(s)				
		(4)	the required ammunition is available				
		(5)	the target does not conflict with any fire support coordination measures				
	f.		rs firing on different targets do not ire (peacetime).				
2.	Each	group	adjusts fire onto its target:				
	a.	perfor					
	b.	perfo	perform drills to fire as ordered				
	c.	group missio	s fire initial adjusting rounds for each				
	d.	comm	djusting mortars follow the fire nands for the adjusting mortar with a it will fire the FFE.				
3. FFE:	The n	nortar į	groups engage the two targets with				
	a.	perfo	rm drills to fire as ordered				
	b.	initiat possib	es FFE for both missions as soon as ble				

Sub-Task	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
c. engage the e	enemy or targets IAW the fire			
the number	E the mission, the CPOs report of rounds expended, and the the number of rounds on the own			
platoon lays	ing another fire mission, mortar mortars using final protective ata, or designated target data.			
4. The mortar groups mission.	prepare for the next fire			

12704 C - OPERATES A FIRE SUPPORT COORDINATION CENTRE

ELEMENT: MOR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The FSCC coordinates the application of all indirect fire support to the battalion, and controls the mortar platoon's indirect fire in support of the battalion during a combat operation. Enemy forces have been operating in the area and conducting harassing missions against friendly manoeuvre elements.

TASK STANDARD:

The FSCC maintains communications with supported manoeuvre units. It coordinates indirect fire, including air, aviation and naval gunfire, within or allotted in support of the battle group. It coordinates and monitors the execution of requests for fire, fire missions with adjacent units, and the production of a fully coordinated fire plan. The FSCC balances the deployment, movement and employment of allotted fire resources with the battle group, and coordinates the resupply of allotted fire resources.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1	The F	SCC maintains communications:			
	a.	monitors battalion net, mortar fire direction net and mortar platoon net			
	b.	functions as the net control station for the battalion mortar fire direction net			
	c.	maintains continuous communications with battalion command net, mortar fire net, artillery regimental net, artillery battery net, naval gunfire net, air request net, and tactical air direction net.			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
2. fire:	The I	FSCC controls the mortar platoon's indirect			
	a.	monitor calls for fire IAW BTS <u>12701</u> , 'Mortar Platoon Process Call for Fire'			
	b.	prepare and maintain target lists, target overlays, and schedules of fire			
	c.	maintains battle maps to include the following:			
		(1) friendly unit locations			
		(2) targets (within 100m accuracy)			
		(3) fire support coordination measures			
		(4) friendly unit control measures			
	d.	prepare and maintain maps for current and planned baseplate positions			
	e.	fire unit availability board			
	f.	maintains MFDC			
	g.	maintain ammunition log.			
3. ensur		mortar platoon commander supervises and efficient functioning of the FSCC:			
	a.	controls FSCC personnel			
	b.	supervises all fire missions			
	c.	verifies fire discipline			
	d.	conducts shift pairing			
	e.	supervises the FSCC sleep plan to ensure			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	24 hour operation			
f.	ensures FSCC personnel use proper communications procedures			
g.	ensures FSCC personnel understand their role in defending battle group HQ			
h.	consolidates and passes information			
i.	exchanges information with TAC CP and intelligence section.			
4. The l	FSCC is prepared at all times to coordinate e.			

12705 C - OCCUPIES A BASEPLATE POSITION

ELEMENT: MOR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The mortar platoon receives an order to occupy a baseplate position. The platoon may prepare a position using an advance party, or not, before occupation. Latest INTSUMs reveal a platoon-sized enemy element withdrawing to establish defensive positions. The enemy is at 65 to 70 percent strength.

TASK STANDARD:

The baseplate position is in a location that provides good cover and concealment, and away from human habitation. It is away from known or suspected enemy locations and natural lines of drift. There are multiple withdrawal routes and is on solid ground. There is overhead clearance. The mortar platoon is prepared to provide indirect fire support to the manoeuvre element within two minutes of moving into a baseplate position. The platoon moves all personnel and equipment into their assigned positions not later than the time specified in the orders. The mortar platoon lays all mortars and sets aiming posts within prescribed time limits.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The mortar platoon commander plans for a mortar			İ
baseplate position:			İ
a. selects a tentative baseplate position based on platoon 2IC's reconnaissance or map reconnaissance			
b. selects an alternate baseplate position based on platoon 2IC's reconnaissance or map reconnaissance.			
2. The platoon 2IC:			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a.	confirms baseplate position is suitable by coordinating with FCs, conducting the reconnaissance, or ordering group commanders to conduct the reconnaissance			
b.	if the platoon 2IC conducts the reconnaissance, he will confirm orders, complete the map reconnaissance, and issue a movement order, para 3 to group commanders (if required), or para 4 to CPOs (if required), check communications, and depart			
c.	enroute:			
	(1) informs the FSCC and mortar groups of any obstacles and routes around them			
	(2) informs the FSCC and mortar groups of any other suitable baseplate positions			
	(3) confirms the suitability of RVs			
d.	at the baseplate position, ensures that it is suitable and accessible			
e.	issues a movement order para 3 to group commanders, if not already done			
f.	meets each group commander at the respective RV and leads them to the baseplate position			
g.	reconnoitres alternate baseplate positions			
h.	upgrades the survey to each baseplate position, if required.			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	reconnoitre to ordered degree, and conduct a quick clearance of their assigned positions.					
4. positi		mortar groups move into their baseplate				
	a.	group commanders designate mortar positions, group centre, aiming points, and CP location				
	b.	establish an A echelon area for vehicles not required at the baseplate, main area, ammo point, or kitchen				
	c.	complete route improvement if required, and prepares for alternate positions, night firing, and digging if ordered				
	d.	each mortarman orients the mortar, mounted or dismounted, in the designated direction of fire				
	e.	maintain interval between mortars IAW SOPs				
	f.	perform drill to place mortars into action				
	g.	the group commander's vehicle is placed near the centre of the position to allow the group commander to announce fire commands if necessary.				
5.	The r	mortar groups establishes local security:				
	a.	all-round security				
	b.	OPs with lead subunits are sited to observe likely enemy avenues of approach, and to provide early warning to protect the				

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		manoeuvre element's main body from surprise			
	c.	defensive positions orient on likely enemy avenues of approach.			
6.	The r	nortar groups lay mortars:			
	a.	aiming circle is correctly mounted, leveled, and oriented			
	b.	groups performs drill to orient mortars with aiming circle, or compass			
7.	СРО	prepares to receive calls for fire.			
8. aimir		mortar detachment obtains an auxiliary t for its mortar:			
	a.	auxiliary aiming point is chosen			
	b.	mortarman obtains the record to the auxiliary aiming point			
	c.	record to the auxiliary aiming point is recorded.			
9. the or	9. The mortar groups upgrade baseplate positions to the ordered stage of occupation.				
10. recei		platoon commander and FSCC prepare to missions.			

INFORMATION OPERATIONS

3001 B/C/D - MAINTAIN OPERATIONS SECURITY

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is ordered to execute a mission as part of a larger force. The enemy has the ability to detect the troop visually and electronically.

TASK STANDARD:

The element prevents the enemy from learning its strength, disposition and intentions.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	ent commanders continually carry out or ity measures:			
a.	control information on a need to know basis			
b.	prohibit fraternization with civilians, as applicable			
c.	limits access to the unit area			
d.	conduct deployment preparations so as to minimize detection			
e.	make sure maps contain minimal details on friendly units			
f.	conduct inspection and briefings to ensure personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal belongings (eg. letters, diaries, photographs, etc)			
g.	sanitize all planning areas and positions			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		before departure.			
2.	The e	element maintains camouflage discipline:			
	a.	concealed vehicle positions and routes are selected			
	b.	track discipline is maintained			
	c.	vehicles and equipment are concealed using natural camouflage, hessian / reflective surface covers and camouflage nets			
	d.	vehicles and equipment are switched off whenever possible to minimize thermal and electro-magnetic signatures. Heat sources are kept under screening systems even when using natural concealment			
	e.	personal and vehicle loads are adjusted to minimize noise			
	f.	lights used for night work are kept to a minimum and are shielded as much as possible			
	g.	movement of individual personnel and vehicles when the element is stationary is kept to a minimum.			
3. proce	The e	element employs communications security			
	a.	CEOI procedures (authentication, code words, frequency changes, etc) are used and enforced			
	b.	short transmissions, lowest possible power settings and directional antennas are used			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
	c.	transr as pos	nission patterns are avoided as much ssible					
	d.	radio	silence is maintained as directed					
	e.		et procedures for working through ing are used					
	f.		unners and wire are used as much as ossible					
	g.	visua	signals are used IAW SOPs.					
4.	The e	element	maintains local security measures					
	a.	Sentri equip comn Night	dentries are sited in a position to provide decurity while remaining undetected. Sentries are in possession of personal equipment, personal weapon or C6/C9, communications equipment, binoculars, Night Vision Goggles, and range card. Sentries know:					
		(1)	location of post and the positions of flanking posts					
		(2)	the route that they must take to and from the post					
		(3)	arcs of observation / fire					
		(4)	enemy situation					
		(5)	particulars of any friendly patrols or others troops in the area					
		(6)	challenging procedure					
		(7)	the password, the alternate password, and the code word to be used to					

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		change to it			
	(8)	action on contact			
	(9)	open fire policy and rules of engagement (ROE)			
	(10)	details and positions of any mines, intruder alarms or aids such as trip flares			
	(11)	the location of immediate superior and how to contact the superior			
	(12)	time of changing sentries and details of the relief system.			
b.	perfor	rms stand to drills			
c.		emplaces early warning devices and command detonated mines, as required			
d.		afeguards weapons, ammunition, sensitive tems, and classified documents			
e.	makes	s maximum use of night observation es.			

3002 C/D - SCREEN

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is operating to screen in front of, or on the flanks of a larger friendly force. The force may be moving or stationary. The enemy is attempting to gain intelligence about the friendly force and / or disrupt its operation. This BTS should be read in conjunction with BTS 4201, 'Delay,' and BTS 4202, 'Guard.'

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company accomplishes its mission IAW higher commander's intent. The platoon / company maintains contact with the enemy and does not become decisively engaged. The platoon / company maintains constant surveillance of avenues of approach, named areas of interest (NAI), and target areas of interest (TAI) IAW orders

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		commander coordinates with higher			
commander	a plan	for the screen to include:			
a.	identi	fication of enemy avenues of			
		ach and possible objectives for enemy			
	recon	naissance and infiltrating elements			
b.	securi	ity forces to cover enemy approaches			
c.		on forces and supporting fires to			
	reimo	orce or assist screening forces			
d.	contro	control measures:			
	(1)	sectors, areas, boundaries or NAI for			
	(1)	subordinate elements			
	(2)				
	(2)	use of reconnaissance and mortar			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
			elements			
		(3)	phase lines			
		(4)	en route RVs, linkup points, contact points, and checkpoints			
		(5)	passage points and infiltration lanes			
		(6)	routes (for patrols or to initial screen line), if needed			
		(7)	alternate positions, withdrawal routes and handover lines			
	e.	engag	gement criteria:			
		(1)	size of enemy unit			
		(2)	type of enemy unit			
		(3)	activity of enemy unit			
2. time s			occupies the initial screen line by the ne order:			
	a.		entified enemy approaches and NAI overed			
	b.		nunications are established and rained			
	c.	enteri	atoon detects all enemy forces ing the area and accurately reports to higher HQ as soon as possible			
3.	The p	olatoon	reacts to the enemy's approach:			
	a.	enem	y units are observed			
	b.	all en	emy information is reported to higher			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		HQ as soon as possible			
	c.	subsequent action is taken IAW orders,			
4. NAI	-	platoon moves to subsequent screen lines or atain the screen:			
	a.	continuously			
	b.	adjusts deployment during limited visibility, whenever possible			
to hig delay with	y, it tal gher HO , or des	platoon becomes decisively engaged by the kes subsequent action IAW orders or reports Q and acts as directed in order to disrupt, stroy the enemy within platoon capabilities ting fire IAW BTS 4201, 'Delay,' or BTS d.'			
6. the so	-	platoon commander controls the movement of lements:			
	a.	elements move, on order, to successive screen positions			
	b.	uses radio orders and control measures to direct the moves			
	c.	elements report when they occupy the new screen line/OPs.			

3003 B - ESTABLISH AND OPERATE AN OBSERVATION POST

ELEMENT: SECTION

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is conducting defensive or delaying operations and is required to observe several named areas of interest (NAIs), target areas of interest (TAIs), or decision points (DPs).

TASK STANDARD:

The section OP party is provided with all the information needed to conduct its task. A suitable OP location is selected which permits observation of the required area without being detected by the enemy. All enemy activity in the area is observed and reported accurately and immediately.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The OP party is briefed on its mission, including	ng:		
a. area to be observed and guidance on wh to look for	ıat		
b. the enemy threat			
c. friendly forces in the area, including oth OPs and patrols	ner		
d. routes through obstacles and friendly positions			
e. when the OP is to be occupied by and for how long	or		
f. communications, including frequencies, codewords, passwords and reporting schedules	,		

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	g.	close air support (CAS) and indirect fire support available, the means of requesting it and the open fire policy			
	h.	fire support coordination measures.			
2.	Suita	ble OP locations are selected and occupied:			
	a.	a location is selected to provide the best possible view of the area to be observed while avoiding obvious terrain features as much as possible			
	b.	a covered approach to the OP is used			
	c.	cover from ground and air observation is considered			
	d.	maximum use is made of camouflage			
	e.	a work party is organized for the preparation of the OP			
	f.	the local defence plan of any nearby friendly elements is conformed to			
	g.	workable communications are confirmed			
	h.	the OP's location and area of observation are reported.			
3.	The C	OP party observes its area:			
	a.	several points throughout the area are selected, and bearings and ranges are determined and recorded on a range / surveillance card to aid in indication of targets			
	b.	tactical information is recorded and			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	reported			
c.	natural camouflage, if used, is replaced during periods of reduced visibility			
d.	targets are engaged with CAS and indirect fire IAW the open fire policy			
e.	results of engagements are reported			
f.	knowledge of the area is continuously improved and recorded.			

3004 B - CONDUCT A DISMOUNTED RECONNAISSANCE PATROL

ELEMENT: SECTION

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The patrol is required to conduct a reconnaissance mission. The patrol is operating separately and provides its own security. The patrol receives all PIR and other intelligence requirements specified in the order for its assigned task. Both friendly and enemy elements have indirect fire and close air support (CAS) capabilities.

TASK STANDARD:

The patrol reconnoitres without detection by the enemy. The patrol completes the reconnaissance and reports all information by the time specified in the order.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards						
		ommander completes battle procedure Battle Procedure,' to include:					
a.	units,	ination with forward and adjacent and the higher commander or unit igence Officer, concerning:					
	(1)	forward lines for passage					
	(2)	friendly obstacles					
	(3)	friendly OPs/LPs					
	(4)	other friendly patrols in the area					
	(5)	fire support					
	(6)	passwords					

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
b.	obser	vation post coordination:			
	(1)	passwords			
	(2)	location			
	(3)	recent enemy and friendly activity.			
2. The pthe patrol fo		ommander plans and task organizes anaissance:			
a.	condu	acts preliminary reconnaissance:			
	(1)	possible routes / distances			
	(2)	tentative RVs			
	(3)	obstacles			
	(4)	landmarks			
	(5)	OPs			
	(6)	dead ground			
	(7)	covered approaches			
	(8)	friendly ambush sites			
	(9)	likely enemy positions			
b.	securi	izes the patrol into reconnaissance, ity, and command elements for RVs ne objective			
c.	define	es patrol concept of operations			
d.	states	equipment required			
e.	condu	acts rehearsals:			

46

		Sub	-Task	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		(1)	patro	l formations and signals			
		(2)	route	S			
		(3)	action	n drills:			
			(a)	halts			
			(b)	RVs			
			(c)	objective RV (ORV)			
			(d)	on the objective			
			(e)	obstacles			
			(f)	enemy contact			
			(g)	if lost or separated			
			(h)	casualty handling			
			(i)	action on illumination or trip flares			
			(j)	action with PWs			
			(k)	passage of lines			
	f.	define	es indiv	vidual tasks			
	g.	coord	inates	fire plan if necessary			
	h.	check fires	s equip	pment and conducts weapon test			
	i.	ensur	es that	the patrol rests			
	j.	condu	ıcts fin	al inspection.			
3.	En ro	oute to	the obj	ective:			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	a.	conducts passage of lines			
	b.	ensures move is silent and controlled			
	c.	counts personnel after each halt or obstacle			
	d.	uses hand signals			
	e.	ensures navigation is accurate			
	f.	conducts security:			
		(1) listening halts			
		(2) flanks, rear protected			
		(3) good observation			
		(4) action at halts			
		(5) carriage of weapons			
	g.	adopts appropriate fieldcraft:			
		(1) individual camouflage			
		(2) use of ground			
		(3) stealth			
		(4) formation to suit the ground.			
4.	Actio	on at objective:			
	a.	ORV and release point must be established			
	b.	patrol commander conducts final reconnaissance of the objective			
	c.	the objective should be covered by fire			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	d.	escape routes are confirmed				
	e.	observation of the enemy must be successful, and reported to higher HQ when possible				
	f.	silent, secure withdrawal covered by fire if required.				
5.	On re	eturn to ORV:				
	a.	checks for casualties				
	b.	checks equipment				
	c.	disseminate information if circumstances permit				
	d.	departs ORV quickly				
	e.	calls for fire support on objective if required				
	f.	ensures move is silent and controlled				
	g.	maintains security				
	h.	follows proper challenging procedure.				
6.	Cond	lucts passage of lines.				
	1 0					
8. speci		mation is passed to higher HQ in the format d no later than the time specified.				

3005 C - CONDUCT AREA RECONNAISSANCE

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITION

The platoon has received orders to conduct an area reconnaissance to locate enemy forces and / or collect terrain information within a prescribed area. Enemy contact is possible or expected. Time is available to conduct the reconnaissance.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon moves to the area of responsibility as quickly as possible. It collects and reports information covering the dominant and key terrain, enemy forces within the area, and all other items of interest specified in orders. It reacts to enemy forces as appropriate and maintains sufficient combat power to continue the mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Platoon commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. Platoon commences move to area of responsibility, which may include passage of lines, and using the formation and type of movement specified by the platoon commander and IAW BTS 4308, 'Move Tactically'.			
3. Conducts reconnaissance of the area of responsibility and reports to the higher commander.			
4. Employs patrols to assist in tactical movement when any of the following apply:			
a. detailed reconnaissance is required, such as to observe a named area of interest (NAI), clear a checkpoint, or observe across intervisibility lines			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
b.	enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made			
c.	vehicle movement through an area is restricted by terrain			
d.	time is available			
e.	security is the primary concern.			
(if author	akes maximum use of sensors, speculative fire ized), available aviation resources to conduct ace of restricted terrain such as woods, built-up defiles.			
6. Pla directed i	atoon collects and reports terrain information as n orders:			
a.	determines and reports trafficability of major routes			
b.	determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the area/zone			
c.	gathers intervisibility line information			
d.	reconnoitres all terrain within the area / zone to the lateral boundaries			
e.	locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges within the area / zone			
f.	locates and evaluates all bridges within the area / zone			
g.	locates and evaluates all tunnels and underpasses within the area / zone			
h.	locates minefields, obstacles, and built-up areas within the area / zone			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
i.	determines the existence and extent of any NBC contamination within the area / zone IAW Cbt Tm BTS 5003, 'Conduct NBC Survey'			
j.	locates bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas within the area/zone.			
7. Plato within the a	on identifies and reports all enemy forces rea / zone:			
a.	identifies enemy elements, activities			
b.	conducts actions on contact			
c.	deploys and reports, seeking cover and concealment or executing appropriate battle drill			
d.	collects and reports accurate information on enemy forces within the area or zone (as applicable). Information includes the following:			
	(1) enemy locations, including supporting units and weapons			
	(2) enemy activities, strength and composition			
	(3) possible avenues of approach for counter-reconnaissance forces or advance guard elements			
	(4) if orders specify that the contact is to be picketed and manoeuvre elements are available, performs handover of contact.			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
8. Conducts coordination at contact points with adjacent units on the flanks as directed.			

3006 C - CONDUCT ROUTE / POINT RECONNAISSANCE

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITION

The platoon has received orders to conduct a route/point reconnaissance alone or as part of a larger level operation. Planning and preparation have been completed, and time is available to conduct the reconnaissance. Enemy contact is possible or expected. Note that this BTS includes both route and point reconnaissance since a route reconnaissance normally includes a number of points to be reconnoitred. Moreover, a route is not limited to roads and tracks.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon deploys. It reconnoitres all key / dominant terrain from which the enemy could influence the route. It identifies and reacts to enemy forces along the route and retains sufficient combat power to continue the mission. It reports critical route information as directed by the commander.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Platoon commander completes battle procedure			
IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. Platoon deploys and moves along the designated			
route:			
a. deploys into a position to observe the line of departure (LD) and beyond using the specified formation			
b. deploys using the appropriate type of movement, adjusting the type as required by the ground, tactical situation and required rate of advance.			
3. Platoon collects information about the route. Note: The platoon commander should receive specific			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
detail is requ tasks suppor	uired. T	higher commander on how much This includes verifying which critical ommander's intent. At a minimum, the ermine trafficability:			
a.	route	the start point (SP) of the primary , the platoon commander sends higher n initial route report:			
	(1)	map accuracy			
	(2)	reports location of the SP using control measures			
	(3)	reports information that platoon can see from SP using control measures			
b.	deterr	mines and reports trafficability of the			
	(1)	identifies the type of ground along the route			
	(2)	for roads and tracks, identifies classification of the route, checking for height, width, and weight restrictions to determine the appropriate class			
	(3)	identifies seasonal limitations of the route			
	(4)	identifies rate of movement the route will support			
	(5)	identifies location and type of any critical points			
c.	direct	noitres to the limit of the enemy's tire range and along terrain that nates the route, to include all lateral			

	Sub-	Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	routes				
d.	reconn IAW o	noitres built-up areas along the route orders			
e.		s and reports bypasses around built- as, obstacles, and contaminated areas			
f.	inspect route:	ts and classifies each bridge along			
		patrol establishes security around bridge			
		if no Engineer Recce Party is available, and / or IAW orders, the patrol inspects the bridge, looking for weather damage, structural damage, and / or possible enemy-set demolitions, and conducts a hasty classification of the bridge			
		platoon / patrol commander sends report to higher HQ			
g.		s and reports fords or crossing sites l bridges on the route, as required			
h.	underp Classif	ts and reports overpasses, passes, and culverts along the route. fication is conducted if Engineer Party is not available and / or IAW			
i.	reconn	oitres all defiles along the route			
j.	locates the rou	s mines, obstacles, and barriers along ate			
k.	identif	y alternate route(s).			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
4. the ro		on identifies enemy forces that can influence			
	a.	identifies enemy forces			
	b.	reacts as appropriate and initiates actions on contact			
	c.	determines enemy strength, composition, activities			
	d.	develops the situation and recommends a course of action to the commander			
	e.	retains sufficient combat power to continue the mission			
	f.	reports accurately.			
5. an acc		ompletion of mission, prepares and submits report IAW unit SOPs.			

3007 F - CONDUCT INTELLIGENCE OPERATIONS

ELEMENT: BATTALION

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The battalion is conducting combat operations. The threat is regimental size in battalion defensive operations and company size in battalion offensive operations.

TASK STANDARD:

All available information about enemy capabilities, terrain, and weather necessary to plan, coordinate, and perform combat operations is identified, reported, and used. The battalion obtains all Commander's Critical Information Requirements (CCIR) in the battalion sector. All brigade-directed intelligence acquisition tasks on the enemy, terrain, or weather are accurately collected and reported by the battalion.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	pattalion commander, staff and subordinates			
_	lligence requirements and plan intelligence			
operations:				
a.	the Intelligence Officer (IO) prepares the intelligence estimate and situational and events templates			
b.	the commander and staff determine information needed for the operation			
c.	the IO develops a plan to collect / request needed intelligence			
d.	subordinate elements plan patrolling / reconnaissance / surveillance to collect needed intelligence information			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	e.	counter-reconnaissance is planned.			
2. surve	The basillance	pattalion performs reconnaissance /			
	a.	the battalion locates enemy combat vehicle weapons systems, obstacles			
	b.	all company-size mounted avenues of approach and all dismounted avenues of approach are accurately identified and rated			
	c.	all observed enemy movements are identified and reported to the battalion HQ			
	d.	information needed to use terrain critical to the battalion scheme of manoeuvre (routes, avenues of approach, fire base positions, etc) is gathered by physical reconnaissance early enough to allow timely adjustment to plans.			
3.	Intell	igence information is disseminated:			
	a.	critical information / intelligence (needed to modify the plan) reaches the designated commanders, subordinate elements, and is passed to adjacent units			
	b.	critical and directed intelligence / information (PIR/IR and information relating to named areas of interest (NAI), decision points (DP), and target areas of interest (TAI) are reported as directed.			
4. activi		pattalion performs counter-reconnaissance			
	a.	helicopter support is requested and used to			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	locate enemy OPs			
b.	a covering force is forward and prepared to defeat enemy reconnaissance elements			
c.	battalion OPs and patrols are sent and active			
d.	the battalion destroys enemy reconnaissance elements during offensive and defensive operations.			

3011 B - CONDUCT ENGINEER / PIONEER RECONNAISSANCE

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The reconnaissance party commander receives orders to reconnoitre a pioneer task, or to determine the availability of pioneer resources. Orders include the reconnaissance information required, the time by which the reconnaissance information is due to the higher commander ordering the reconnaissance, and the format in which the information is to be provided (eg. oral briefing, reconnaissance / design proforma, or written reconnaissance report). Contact with the enemy during the reconnaissance is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance, acquiring all of the required information, and submits / transmits the information in the appropriate format to the higher commander who ordered the reconnaissance no later than the time specified in orders. The reconnaissance party takes the appropriate security measures to minimize casualties during the reconnaissance and to deny the enemy knowledge of the reconnaissance party's intentions. The time required to complete this task is increased when conducting it under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The reconnaissance party commander verifies the information to be acquired during the reconnaissance and seeks clarification as necessary.			
2. The reconnaissance party commander ensures that the required personnel (eg. by occupation, qualification, position) and stores / equipment are prepared.			
3. The reconnaissance party commander plans the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
reconnaissar	nce:			
a.	performs mission analysis to confirm specified / implied tasks, constraints / limitations on reconnaissance (eg. daylight reconnaissance / routes), and the purpose of the reconnaissance (mission statement)			
b.	performs a detailed time estimate, working backwards from the time that the reconnaissance report is due			
c.	performs a detailed map / air photo study to determine what sites to reconnoitre (if more than one) and to identify suitable vantage points and routes			
d.	plans security during the reconnaissance. Identifies any local protection available			
e.	identifies any additional reconnaissance party personnel and stores / equipment required (eg. above and beyond those items already being prepared in para 2)			
f.	prepares a list of questions to be answered, technical data to be acquired (as per proforma) and decisions to be taken during the reconnaissance			
g.	establish priority for sites to be visited (if more than one), selects routes accordingly, and develops a detailed reconnaissance timetable.			
	econnaissance party commander issue orders reconnaissance party in detail including:			
a.	routes			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	timings			
	c.	security			
	d.	action on contact and direct / indirect fire			
	e.	reconnaissance objectives / information requirements			
	f.	individual reconnaissance party member tasks (eg. taking measurements)			
	g.	action in the event of casualties / problems (eg. chain of command and dissemination of information within the reconnaissance party).			
	rsals ar	econnaissance party conducts 'action on' nd rehearses any complex measurement quired.			
6. recon	The r	econnaissance party conducts the nce:			
	a.	maintains tactical posture			
	b.	maintains sense of urgency			
	c.	takes appropriate security measures. Coordinates with manoeuvre elements providing local security, if available			
	d.	collects information efficiently and in accordance with priorities / timetable established during planning, making adjustments as necessary			
	e.	reacts to enemy contact and direct / indirect fire IAW BTS 5005, 'React to Contact /			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.' 7. The reconnaissance party commander submits/transmits accurate reconnaissance information IAW the required format no later than the time specified in orders. Oral briefings are clear and concise and written reconnaissance reports / design proformas / overlays / traces are legible and complete.			

3012 B - RECONNOITRE A DEMOLITION TARGET

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The reconnaissance party receives orders to reconnoitre a potential demolition target. Orders include the target location, type of obstacle to be reconnoitred, obstacle intent, the time by which the reconnaissance report is due, and the format in which the information is to be provided (eg. written DND 2103 or 2107, oral transmission of E120B or E122B, etc). Orders may include the quantities of Class IV (field defences) or Class V (ammunition, including mines and explosives) initially allocated to the target, if an initial allocation was provided in orders from higher (eg. push system). The area is secure, but enemy contact with section-size elements is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance, acquiring all of the required information, and submits/transmits the information to the superior who ordered the reconnaissance no later than the time specified in orders. Subsequent execution of the mission is not jeopardized by inaccurate measurements taken and / or calculations performed during the reconnaissance. The reconnaissance party takes the appropriate security measures. The time required is increased when performing this task under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	JjeuI
1. Reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance.'			
2. With the supported manoeuvre commander, the reconnaissance party commander sites the obstacle ensuring that the fundamentals of obstacle placement are observed and ensuring that it is integrated with the manoeuvre, fire and other plans, as required.			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
3. Reconnaissance party gathers and records specific information / data for the type of target:			
a. accurately completes portions of the applicable reconnaissance report			
(1) Obstacle Recce Report (DND 2103/E120B OBSRECCEREP) for all targets other than bridge demolitions, or			
(2) Bridge Demolition Recce Report (DND 2107/E121B BRDMLRECCEREP)			
b. provides sketch of zulu harbour, if required.			
4. If an initial Class IV/V allocation was provided in orders, the reconnaissance party commander confirms that the initial allocation is sufficient to execute the demolition and achieve the required obstacle intent or identifies the shortfall for corrective action.			

3013 B - RECONNOITRE A GAP CROSSING SITE

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The reconnaissance party commander receives orders to reconnoitre a gap-crossing site. Orders include the type of crossing required (eg. assault boat, NSB, aerial ropeway). Orders also include the time by which reconnaissance report is due, types / MLC of vehicles, traffic density, loads to be crossed (eg. for aerial ropeway), and the format in which the information is to be provided (eg. DND 2106, design proforma, support area matrix, map trace, etc). Contact with up to section-sized enemy elements during this task may be possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance, acquiring all the requested / required information and submits / transmits the information to the superior who ordered the reconnaissance no later than the time specified in orders. Subsequent execution of the mission is not jeopardized by inaccurate measurements taken or calculations performed during the reconnaissance. The reconnaissance party takes the appropriate security measures to minimize casualties during the reconnaissance and to deny the enemy knowledge of the reconnaissance party's intentions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer			
Reconnaissance.'			
2. Reconnaissance party gathers and records specific information / data for type of gap crossing means indicated in orders, as follows:			
a. employs distance and elevation measuring technique appropriate to the tactical			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	situation			
b.	accurately completes applicable portions of Crossing Site Recce Report (DND 2106/E112B GAPRECCEREP)			
c.	site plan sketch on the DND 2106 includes all of the key areas appropriate to the crossing means (eg. debussing area, BOLP, BIP for assault boat crossing sites, and launch sites, raft tracks, landing points, construction area)			
d.	accurately completes design proforma, if applicable			
e.	completes a support area matrix to include for each support area:			
	(1) location description			
	(2) site size / capacity			
	(3) access in and out			
	(4) drainage			
	(5) vegetation			
	(6) camouflage			
	(7) soil bearing capacity.			

3014 B - RECONNOITRE AN ENEMY MINEFIELD

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

A reconnaissance party is ordered to conduct a dismounted minefield reconnaissance in support of a deliberate breaching operation. The reconnaissance is conducted during a period of reduced visibility. Orders include the grid reference of the start point for the reconnaissance, the bearing to be taken, and the time by which the reconnaissance information is due. The minefield is less than 350 metres in depth. A security element is provided to provide direct/request indirect fire in the event that the reconnaissance party is detected. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes the reconnaissance and submits a report within the time allotted. The party detects all mines and trip wires on the bearing provided in orders. The party takes all reasonable precautions to avoid detection during the reconnaissance.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The reconnaissance party commander plans and conducts a reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance.'			
2. The reconnaissance party conducts reconnaissance:			
a. party uses concealed routes to approach the start point of the reconnaissance			
b. party adopts a single file formation upon arrival at the start point. No 1 fastens the fish line to the start point and advances			

	Sub	-Tasks	and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	along	the req	uired bearing			
c.	recon	naissan	ge (IC) ensures that the correct spacing throughout the ce			
d.	for tri	No 1 searches one metre wide path, feeling for trip wires, searching for surface mines, and prodding for buried mines				
e.		takes th wire/m	ne following action on locating ine:			
	(1)	Trip V	Vire:			
		(a)	detaches the reel of fish line and traces the trip wire to both ends			
		(b)	searches path along the trip wire for other trip wires and mines			
		(c)	neutralizes mechanism at the end of the trip wire and cuts the wire only after both ends have been checked			
		(d)	reattaches the reel of fish line and continues searching along the required bearing			
	(2)	Mine:				
		(a)	if capable of doing so, No 1 neutralizes and marks the mine. If not, then simply marks the mine			

	Sub-Task	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(b)	No 1 withdraws to allow the IC to move forward to investigate the mine			
	(c)	if the IC is capable of neutralizing the mine he does so, if not the mine is marked and bypassed			
	(d)	No 1 reassumes the point position and continues searching			
f.	the IC follows No 1 and marks all reported/marked trip wires and mines on the fish line using pre-arranged code (loops in fish line, etc)				
g,	behind the I search for do When some the IC is info withdraws a allow the IC finding. IAV continues the investigation	No 2 follows a minimum of five metres behind the IC, using a mine detector to search for deeper buried metallic mines. When something is located it is marked and the IC is informed. The No 2 then withdraws a minimum of five metres to allow the IC to return to investigate the finding. IAW IC's instructions, No 1 either continues the search during the IC's investigation or waits until the investigation is complete before continuing the search			
h.	the IC determined the far side of	sly determined point or when mines that the party has reached of the minefield, the fish line is dentify the finish point			
i.	running the	races its steps, in reverse order, fish line through their hands e loops warn them of the any mines			

Sub-Tasks ar	nd Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
j. No 1 reels in the mine markers	e fish line and recovers all			
all information	he can without disturbing turns to the friendly side			
	to the start point, all stores or to ensure that nothing has l.			
3. If other obstacles are expressions are supported in the reconnaissance.				
4. Upon return to the par the fish line and the position The IC then plots to scale the encountered on a record draw point, end point, and all mine	e location and type of mines ving, identifying the start			

13701 C - CONDUCTS SCREEN AND FLANK SECURITY

ELEMENT: AA PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The anti-armour platoon is ordered to screen or flank the manouevre unit's movement, by fire if necessary. The enemy situation is unknown.

TASK STANDARD:

The anti-armour platoon provides early warning of enemy approach. The platoon provides information on enemy equipment, organization, and axis of advance. The platoon does not allow the enemy to flank the main body IAW its assigned mission.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. and fl		platoon commander plans to conduct screen curity:			
	a.	platoon orients on the enemy's mounted avenues of approach			
	b.	the screen / flank is within effective supporting range of battalion mortars and artillery			
	c.	the platoon commander or higher HQ specifies engagement control measures to coordinate the initial and subsequent fires and movement			
	d.	the platoon commander specifies open fire policy and priority of engagement IAW higher orders.			
2.	The p	platoon occupies the screen /flank:			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	a.	firing positions and OPs are established			
	b.	the screen / flank is occupied.			
3. the su		platoon screens and provides flank security to d manoeuvre element:			
	a.	once in positions, the platoon sections / detachments observe their assigned sectors			
	b.	the platoon orients on the supported manoeuvre elements			
	c.	firing positions provide overwatch of the potential enemy positions and avenues of approach			
	d.	flank protection of supported manoeuvre elements is continuous			
	e.	flank firing positions cannot be engaged by the same enemy fires that are engaging the manoeuvre elements			
	f.	security is not masked by friendly movement			
	g.	enemy vehicles closest to the supported manoeuvre elements are engaged first.			
4. mano		platoon coordinates with the supported elements:			
	a.	the platoon maintains direct communication with the supported manoeuvre elements			
	b.	the platoon's movement and security are consistent with the manoeuvre requirements of the supported manoeuvre elements			
	c.	screen / flank security movement does not			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		delay supported manoeuvre elements			
	d.	enemy forces not presenting an immediate threat to the supported manoeuvre elements are reported to the supported manoeuvre elements, but not engaged.			
5.	The p	platoon detects enemy armour:			
	a.	the platoon performs surveillance			
	b.	all enemy elements in the sector are observed.			
6.	The p	platoon provides a fire base:			
	a.	gunners identify and engage targets within 30 seconds of the order to engage			
	b.	platoon elements know the direction, size, and location of the enemy force as soon as possible after identification			
	c.	fire base is away from friendly units			
	d.	as friendly elements close with the enemy, anti-armour platoon lifts and shifts fire on withdrawing enemy vehicles, or covers likely enemy avenues of reinforcement IAW orders			
7. missi		platoon engages the enemy IAW its assigned			
	a.	enemy reconnaissance elements are destroyed or repelled			
	b.	enemy combat elements are halted or forced to deploy			
	c.	enemy forces are not engaged if they			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		exceed the engagement criteria specified by the platoon commander or higher HQ.			
8.	The p	platoon maintains early warning:			
	a.	contact of the enemy is maintained			
	b.	enemy elements are engaged by screening / flanking elements before enemy observes or engages the manouevre unit main body			
	c.	the manoeuvre unit main body is not observed or engaged with direct fire unless warned by the platoon			
9.	The p	platoon reports enemy activity:			
	a.	all enemy activity in the assigned sector is reported to he next higher HQ			
	b.	reports are sent IAW SOPs			
	c.	all reports are submitted as soon as possible after enemy activities are observed.			
10.	The p	platoon moves:			
	a.	to new firing positions and OPs as specified in orders			
	b.	in conjunction with higher intent.			

13702 C - CONDUCT A LAY BACK PATROL

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 12345 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon has been ordered to act as a lay back force or has been cut off from friendly units. The enemy has indirect fire and close air support (CAS) capabilities. The platoon must provide its own security.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon prevents the enemy from learning its location, strength, and intentions. The platoon avoids decisive engagement. The platoon accomplishes its assigned combat tasks according to the standards for those specific tasks. The platoon links up with friendly forces at the time and place specified by the orders.

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
1. The p situation and IAW the ass				
a.	task organizes the platoon for the operation			
b.	uses only those personnel and equipment that are needed			
c.	evacuates wounded personnel, inoperable equipment, or excess items			
d.	requests additional manoeuvre arm, support arm, or service assets as needed (Fire Controller (FC), MAs, engineers, anti- armour weapons, APCs, machine guns, demolitions, or special equipment)			
e.	plans for deception of the enemy or ensures the platoon actions support the higher unit's			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards					
		commander conducts reconnaissance rm or deny the plan:				
a.	condu	acts a map reconnaissance				
b.		acts a ground reconnaissance as time ts. Identifies:				
	(1)	suitable sites for patrol bases				
	(2)	OPs				
	(3)	caches				
	(4)	water sources				
	(5)	avenues of approach (mounted and foot)				
	(6)	kill zones				
	(7)	engagement areas				
	(8)	likely enemy objectives and positions				
	(9)	covered and concealed approach routes.				
preparing th	3. The platoon 2IC assists the platoon commander in preparing the platoon for the operation IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure':					
a.		s additional supplies for support when contact with friendly units				
b.	plans	possible caches				

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
c.	plans for PW and casualty evacuation			
standing of	he platoon is cut off from friendly units and has orders to conduct unplanned lay back s, the platoon commander:			
a.	establishes local security, to include OPs and early warning devices and notifies the company			
b.	makes an estimate based on the enemy situation and the status of elements under platoon control and plans the operation			
c.	decides whether to remain in position or to move to a hide position in a different location based on the situation estimate			
d.	follows the same steps as a deliberate operation once in position			
5. Th	e platoon conducts the lay back operation:			
a.	executes deception activities IAW the order			
b.	moves undetected to the hide position			
c.	remains undetected by the enemy during the operation. Refer to BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations Security.'			
6. Th	e platoon conducts combat operations against			
a.	attacks high-priority targets in enemy's rear (command and control, manoeuvre arm, support arm, lines of communication) based on the platoon commander's intent or the platoon mission			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	collects intelligence on enemy forces			
	c.	calls for and controls artillery and air strikes			
	d.	avoids decisive engagement by the enemy unless required by the platoon commander's intent.			
7.	The p	platoon links up with friendly forces:			
	a.	determines the manner of regaining contact with friendly units			
	b.	conducts linkup as a moving or a stationary unit IAW BTS <u>4307</u> , 'Link-up'			
	c.	returns to friendly unit no later than the time specified by higher HQ.			

MANOUEVRE

OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS

4001 B/C - ATTACK

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon commander reacts to effective enemy fire, and conducts a quick attack. The enemy has been in position for 24 hours and may have prepared positions with mines and wire. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire capabilities. When a well-prepared enemy defence must be defeated, a deliberate attack may be required, with emphasis on planning and preparation at the expense of speed and time. In this case, the enemy location may or may not be known, and the enemy may or may not have engaged the friendly force.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon successfully conducts a quick or deliberate attack. The section / platoon captures, destroys or forces the withdrawal of the enemy IAW the assigned mission.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	ne section takes action IAW Section Battle Drill			
Two, 'Re	eaction to Effective Enemy Fire,' and IAW			
Section E	Battle Drill Three, 'Locates the Enemy.'			
	ements not in contact help to determine enemy information:			
a.	location of, and covered and concealed routes into enemy's flanks and rear			
b.	possible locations of obstacles and supporting enemy elements			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards							
	c.	all information on the enemy and terrain is reported to the section / platoon commander and relayed to the higher HQ.						
comb	on com	section is operating independently, the mander decides if the section has sufficient er to destroy the enemy, or if the section n, bypass, or withdraw.						
'Reac Fire,'	nander ction to and m	section is part of a platoon, the platoon takes action IAW Platoon Battle Drill One, Section coming under Effective Enemy oves forward to assess the situation and or orders the section commander to attack.						
5. If the section is operating independently and has sufficient combat power to destroy the enemy, or on order from the platoon commander to attack, the section commander completes a combat estimate, issues battle orders, and takes immediate action IAW Section Battle Drills:								
	a.	Battle Drill Four - 'Winning the Fire Fight'						
	b.	Battle Drill Five - 'Approach'						
	c.	Battle Drill Six - 'The Assault'						
	d.	Battle Drill Seven - 'Consolidation.'						
6. Additional fire support for the section attack may be obtained from the platoon.								
OR								
	on attac	platoon commander decides to conduct a ck, he completes a combat estimate, issues , and takes action IAW Platoon Battle Drills:						
	a.	Battle Drill Two - 'The Hasty Attack'						

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	JJauI
b. Battle Drill Three - 'Consolidation.'			
8. The section / platoon exploits any opportunity that may exist, but does not proceed beyond the limit of exploitation.			
9. The section / platoon commander reports the situation to higher HQ and continues the mission.			

4001 D - ATTACK

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company commander reacts to effective enemy fire, and conducts a quick attack. The enemy has been in position for 24 hours and may have prepared positions with mines and wire. Both friendly and enemy forces have indirect fire capabilities. When a well-prepared enemy defence must be defeated, a deliberate attack may be required, with emphasis on planning and preparation at the expense of speed and time. In this case, the enemy location may or may not be known, and the enemy may or may not have engaged the friendly force.

TASK STANDARD:

The company successfully conducts a quick or deliberate attack. The company captures, destroys or forces the withdrawal of the enemy IAW the assigned mission.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon takes action IAW Platoon Battle Drill One, 'Reaction to Section coming under Effective			
Enemy Fire,' and the platoon commander moves forward to assess the situation.			
2. The platoon commander sends a contact report to the company commander.			
3. Elements not in contact help to determine essential enemy information:			
a. location of, and covered and concealed routes into enemy's flanks and rear			
b. possible locations of obstacles and supporting enemy elements			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards						Ineff
	C.	all information on the enemy and terrain is reported to the company commander and relayed to the higher HQ.					
move comb	4. Based on the contact report, the company commander orders the platoon commander to attack, or moves forward and decides if the company has sufficient combat power to destroy the enemy, or whether the company should dig in, bypass, or withdraw.						
5. comp		compa		o conduct a quick attack, the			
	a.	issues	es a warning order				
	b.	comp	letes a	combat estimate			
	c.	make	s a dire	ect and indirect fire plan			
	d.	ensur	es the	company prepares for battle:			
		(1)	picke	ts the enemy			
		(2)	regro	ups:			
			(a)	command element			
			(b)	fire support element			
			(c)	assault element			
			(d)	protective elements			
			(e)	service support elements			
			(f)	reserve element			
		(3)	condi	ucts resupply			
		(4)	make	s preliminary moves			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards				
		(5) secures the line of departure (LD)			
	e.	issues verbal orders			
6.	The c	company conducts the attack:			
	a.	mounting stage			
	b.	assault stage:			
		(1) break-in			
		(2) fighting through			
	c.	consolidation stage.			
7. The company exploits any opportunity that may exist, but does not proceed beyond the limit of exploitation.					
8. highe		company commander reports the situation to and continues the mission.			

4002 B/C - ESTABLISH A FIRE BASE

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is tasked to establish a firebase. The assault element is either in or expected to make contact and can request suppressive fire on the enemy.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon suppresses the enemy so that it is unable to manoeuvre and the friendly assault force is able to conduct their assigned mission. Effective control measures and recognition signals are employed to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	section / platoon commander conducts a ance of the tentative fire base position and			
a.	determines which weapons can provide effective fire support to cover the assault element			
b.	ensures position provides observation of and fields of fire covering the objective area, and approaches or withdrawal routes, as designated			
c.	ensures position provides adequate cover and concealment as appropriate.			
	section / platoon commander confirms with commander:			
a.	ability to bring effective fire support onto the objective			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	fire control measures.			
3.	The s	section / platoon commander:			
	a.	establishes arcs of fire, specific targets, and reference points			
	b.	designates engagement procedures and fire control measures (rate of fire, check fire, shift fire)			
	c.	establishes priority of targets			
	d.	designates action on receipt of check fire.			
4.	The s	section / platoon moves to firing positions:			
	a.	establishes security for the move			
	b.	employs covered and concealed routes			
	c.	is in position at the designated time			
	d.	adopts good positions of concealment and observation / fire			
	e.	provides all-round security			
	f.	verifies fire engagement procedures and control measures.			
5. The section / platoon maintains observation and reports on additional enemy forces or activity.					
6. On order, the section / platoon, under the higher commander's control, engages the enemy with appropriate weapons and rate of fire.					
7.	IAW	orders, the section / platoon:			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a.	shifts and / or checks fire			
b.	continues to observe assigned sectors and is prepared to engage any threat to the assault force			
c.	moves to a position to block possible enemy counter attack, or to exploit.			

4003 C/D - BREAKOUT

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has become encircled, either unintentionally, or deliberately as part of a defensive plan. Other friendly elements may also be encircled. The enemy has the capability to attack by air, ground and indirect fire. Breaking out by stealth is not feasible. The platoon / company provides its own security.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company moves its personnel and primary weapon systems out from the encirclement. Where the platoon / company has become encircled unintentionally, the breakout is initiated as soon as possible and before the enemy has the time to prepare its defences. Where the platoon / company becomes encircled deliberately and is breaking out on order, the breakout starts no later than the time ordered. Effective control measures and recognition signals are employed to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The pl	atoon / company commander organizes the			
encircled for	ce:			
	assumes control of all friendly forces in the encirclement and initiates reestablishment of a chain of command as soon as possible			
	initiates the deployment of all elements for all-round defence			
c.	establishes a reserve			
	obtains status of units (personnel, weapons, equipment, ammunition and other supplies)			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	and reorganizes logistics.			
	platoon / company commander maintains tions with higher HQ.			
3. The preakout:	platoon / company commander plans the			
a.	directs reconnaissance of the enemy to determine weak points and gaps			
b.	decides on the breakout point(s)			
c.	designates an assault element to create and maintain the opening and security elements to provide protection and deception on the perimeter and to cover the front, flanks and rear of the main body while it is moving			
d.	organizes all available direct and indirect fire support, and develops an offensive fire plan			
e.	conducts linkup and rearward passage of lines planning and coordination			
f.	prepares to destroy equipment that cannot be moved			
g.	makes provision for personnel who cannot accompany the breakout.			
4. The p	platoon / company executes the attack:			
a.	rapidly executes the attack before the enemy can organize his defences, or on order for a deliberate encirclement.			
b.	the attack focuses the manouevre units and fire support at gap or weakness in the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	enemy's defences			
c.	the platoon / company maintains all-round security and fixes the enemy in other areas where possible			
d.	deception activities are employed to surprise the enemy as to the time and location of the breakout attack			
e.	the attack exploits limited visibility if possible			
f.	the attack is coordinated with supporting attacks by friendly units outside the encirclement when possible			
g.	on order, the defending elements disengage and follow the breakout attack			
h.	the defending elements blow charges and destroy equipment left behind			
i.	the platoon / company effectively employs control measures and recognition signals to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire			
j.	the platoon / company reports breakout status to higher HQ.			

4004 C/D - RAID

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is in the assembly area or defensive sector / battle position. It has been ordered to launch a penetration of enemy territory to gain information, create confusion, destroy material and disrupt enemy plans. The objective is lightly defended. Lightly defended or undefended routes are available to move to the objective. The specific task to be accomplished on the objective is outlined in orders, and is normally destruction of a combat support, combat service support, or command and control facility, or the capture of enemy personnel. Timings for the operation are specified.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company initiates the raid not later than the time specified in the order, surprises the enemy, assaults the objective and accomplishes its assigned task within the commander's intent. It obtains all information requirements from the raid site. Effective control measures and recognition signals are employed to prevent or minimize casualties due to friendly fire. The platoon / company retains sufficient combat power to continue subsequent operations IAW superior commander's orders.

Sub-Tasks and Standards			Ineff
1. Conduct battle procedure IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle			
Procedure,' with special attention paid to:			
.1			
a. enemy identification and location			
b. time appreciation			
o. time appreciation			
c. map study			
d. coordination with friendly units, departure			
and return through friendly lines, and fire			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		support			
	e.	selection of patrol members			
	f.	equipment and weapons			
	g.	reconnaissance			
	h.	detailed planning:			
		(1) rehearsals for action at the objective			
		(2) signals			
		(3) passwords			
		(4) chain of command			
2.	The p	olatoon / company regroups:			
	a.	security, support, assault elements and required special teams (eg. demolition, PW, search, etc) are identified and organized			
	b.	maintains subunit integrity when possible.			
		patrol / company commander establishes the e reconnaissance group conducts a nee:			
	a.	verify routes to security, support and assault positions, and the objective			
	b.	identifies enemy or likely enemy positions, and obstacles			
	c.	observe the enemy, if possible, and verify and update intelligence information			
	d.	conduct reconnaissance undetected			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
e.	on completion of the reconnaissance, the raid commander, if possible, ensures that constant observation is maintained on the objective and the routes leading to it, or continues to seek current information accordingly.			
on informati	execution or cancellation of the raid is based on gained during the reconnaissance and the nander's guidance:			
a.	platoon / company commander could recommend cancellation if the number of enemy personnel in the objective area significantly alters the engagement ratio, or if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements into the area is detected or increased air coverage is present that would likely result in failure			
b.	platoon / company commander adjusts the raid plan to incorporate the current intelligence.			
5. The c	conduct of the raid is considered feasible:			
a.	before moving into positions, each element checks ammunition, weapons and special equipment for the mission			
b.	security element occupies designated positions			
c.	control measures for the objective, lanes, limits of exploitation, etc, are designated			
d.	withdrawal routes back to friendly lines are designated.			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
6.	The platoon / company moves to covered and ealed positions:				
	a.	support element moves undetected			
	b.	support element assumes positions from which fire may be placed on the objective.			
	c.	the assault element occupies the attack position.			
7. raid:	The p	platoon / company conducts a dismounted			
	a.	the planned indirect suppressive or obscuration fire on known and suspected enemy positions that can support the objective is initiated			
	b.	the assault element advances towards the objective			
	c.	the assault element holds fire until ready to penetrate the objective or they are engaged by direct enemy fire			
	d.	on arrival at the designated point/line, the assault element signals for the shifting of fire			
	e.	indirect fire on the objective is shifted			
	f.	the support element shifts fire to the flanks of targets, roads, bridges or outlying fire bases			
	g.	the assault element fights through to the far side of the objective			
	h.	once the assault has started, the security			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		element prevents enemy entry into or escape from the objective area			
	i.	special teams accomplish all assigned tasks (demolition teams set charges, search teams search the objective and secure any enemy survivors as prisoners, etc)			
	j.	special team commanders signal the raid commander when assigned tasks are completed.			
8.	The p	platoon / company conducts a mounted raid:			
	a.	the platoon / company occupies positions in a hide until the order is given to initiate the raid			
	b.	radio silence is maintained			
	c.	movement, noise and light discipline are maintained			
	d.	the planned indirect suppression or obscuration fire is initiated			
	e.	assault elements commence firing and advance to the objective			
	f.	the assault element does not proceed beyond the limit of exploitation			
	g.	the assault element fights through the objective, achieving the raid intent.			
9. On order or signal of the platoon / company commander, the assault element withdraws from the objective:					
	a.	element / teams commanders account for all			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		personnel and report casualty status to the platoon / company commander			
	b.	direct or indirect fire is ordered to mask the withdrawal			
	c.	the withdrawal is ordered before the enemy can fix the platoon / company.			
10. ORV		platoon / company moves to the designated			
	a.	the platoon / company withdraws from the objective in the sequence designated in the order			
	b.	all personnel and equipment are accounted for			
	c.	the position is covered and concealed away from the objective area			
	d.	ammunition and equipment is redistributed			
	e.	evacuation of wounded is arranged			
	f.	handle PWs IAW BTS <u>6004</u> , 'Handle PWs and Detainees.'			
11. The platoon / company commander provides a patrol / raid report as soon as possible to battle group / battalion HQ.					

4005 C - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA)

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is operating as a part of a higher unit in a built-up area (BUA) environment. In most instances the platoon will be tasked with attacking only one building at a time. The platoon identifies enemy of unknown size in a building(s) and is tasked to clear the building(s). The platoon will have the required support weapons and include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in the building(s) or within the assigned platoon objective, to the greatest extent possible given the tactical situation and size of enemy force. The platoon executes its mission within the time specified in the operation order. The platoon maintains a sufficient force capable of reacting to an enemy counter-attack. The platoon consolidates and prepares to support follow-on operations when its objective is reached or when forced to do so by attrition. Rules of engagement are adhered to

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure,' with particular attention to: a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration given to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including: (1) avenues of approach			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
(2) fields of fire and observation				
	(3) obstacles			
	(4) cover and concealment			
	(5) manoeuvre and mobility			
	(6) fire hazard			
	(7) command and control			
	(8) key terrain			
b.	ensuring that effective command, control and coordination measures are established			
c.	providing for explosives and mission essential equipment			
d.	providing for ammunition resupply			
e.	providing for the handling of casualties, prisoners of war, and non-combatants.			
2. The p platoon into tailored and assigned mis				
3. Move the use of co rooftops, ex whenever po				
enemy defer and along ro fires. Open a	ement is conducted, when possible, after asive fires have been suppressed or obscured, butes which do not mask friendly suppressive areas should be crossed rapidly under the cof smoke and suppression of the enemy.			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
5. the excomn					
6. initial is ens					
7.	Actio	ns of the support element:			
	a.	assignment of specific areas of responsibility to individual soldiers and weapon systems			
	b.	suppression and / or impairment of enemy gunners within the objective building(s) and adjacent buildings to allow the assault element to complete entry operations with minimum casualties			
	c.	isolation of the objective building(s) with direct and indirect fires to prevent enemy withdrawal, reinforcement or counter- attack;			
	d.	shifting supporting fires as necessary;			
	e.	provision of replacements and ammunition resupply to the assault force as required			
	f.	maintenance of a reserve, located where the assault can be rapidly reinforced.			
8. The assault element assaults the objective building(s) under direction of the platoon commander and building clearance drills are executed:					
	a.	the objective is approached from the enemy flank or rear only when sufficient fires are			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	suppressing the enemy			
b.	an entry point is established and the building is entered at the highest level possible, and only from the ground level when forced to do so			
c.	grenades are employed after due consideration is given to fratricide and collateral damage, including injury to non- combatants as applicable			
d.	the entry point is secured as well as covering staircases and other routes leading to upper and lower stories once inside the building			
e.	rooms which overlook the approaches to the objective building are cleared first;			
f.	cleared rooms are marked IAW SOPs			
g.	clearance teams are positioned to secure entry points, hallways, stairs and cleared rooms from enemy infiltration.			
9. Once foothold and launches fol as necessary supported by commander continue the				
of the assign	assault element commander clears to the limit ned objective and orders consolidation once it cured or when forced to do so.			
	munications with the platoon commander and element are maintained throughout and the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
tactical situate requested.	ation is reported when warranted and / or					
the cleared be secured or w	12. The platoon commander orders consolidation in the cleared building(s) once the objective has been secured or when forced to do so. The platoon consolidates IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate':					
a.	the chain of command is confirmed and / or re-established;					
b.	the platoon status and tactical situation are reported to the higher HQ IAW SOPs					
c.	all-round defence is established and soldiers are positioned to cover enemy routes of counter-attack and infiltration into the building					
d.	the building(s), including the entry point(s), is marked IAW SOPs to indicate that it has been cleared					
e.	casualties are treated and evacuated					
f.	ammunition is redistributed and resupply is requested as required; and					
g.	the platoon prepares to support follow-on operations and / or continues its assigned mission.					

4005 D - FIGHT IN A BUILT-UP AREA (FIBUA)

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATIION: 12345 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company is operating as a part of a higher unit and is ordered to assault an enemy platoon in a built-up area. The enemy is in prepared positions, protected by obstacles. The enemy has crew-served weapons and is supported by indirect fire. The company will have the required support weapons and specialized equipment to carry out its task. This will normally include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission-specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The company kills, captures or forces the withdrawal of all enemy in its assigned area to the greatest extent possible given the tactical situation and size of enemy force. The company executes its mission within the time specified in the operation order. The company maintains a sufficient force capable of reacting to an enemy counterattack. The company consolidates and prepares to support follow-on operations when its objective is reached or when forced to do so by attrition. Rules of engagement are adhered to.

Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The company commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure,' with			
particular attention to:			
a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration given to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including:			
(1) avenues of approach			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff				
	(2)	fields of fire and observation					
	(3)	obstacles					
	(4)	cover and concealment					
	(5)	manoeuvre and mobility					
	(6)	fire hazard					
	(7)	command and control					
	(8)	key terrain					
b.	estable and cosector coord						
c.	explo	oping a scheme of manoeuvre which its enemy flanks, gaps and nesses					
d.	includ	maintenance of operations security including the development and execution of appropriate deception measures					
e.		providing for explosives and mission essential equipment					
f.	provi	ding for ammunition resupply					
g.		ding for the handling of casualties, ners of war, and non-combatants.					
2. The company intarmed appro							
		o the assault position is conducted covered and concealed routes to					

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
approac areas.				
employe obstacle	Reconnaissance and security elements are ed to detect enemy forces, positions and es, and to prevent the same from interfering with pany movement.			
the exec	The company commander is well forward during cution of the operation and maintains positive and and control throughout.			
element	The company commander positions support s to provide support to the assault element. of the support element include:			
a	isolation of the objective using direct and indirect fire support			
b	suppression of enemy positions and weapon systems			
С	over-watching the movement of the assault element.			
7. Torce we assault exploit				
8. Tocommer element objective movement				
	The assault element conducts the assault on the objective. Actions include:			

		Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	a.	seizing a foothold in the objective				
	b.	killing, capturing, destroying or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy as required by the commander's intent				
	c.	breaching obstacles encountered				
	d.	clearing buildings IAW established clearance drills				
	e.	signaling the supporting fires to be lifted and / or shifted when they endanger the assault element				
	f.	reporting to the company commander when the objective has been secured.				
10. the si	10. The company commander commits the reserve as the situation warrants:					
	a. to exploit success or an enemy weakness					
	b. to support a forward element through manoeuvre					
	c. to assume the mission of another element which no longer has sufficient combat power to attain its task					
	d.	to maintain the momentum of the attack				
	e.	to hold buildings seized by another element				
	f.	to defeat, block or repel enemy counterattacks.				
objec	ance is tive ha	overcome or until the limit of the assigned s been reached. Based on the commander's er movement / actions may take place to				

	Sub Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
exploit the a				
commander	ent commanders keep the company informed of their status and tactical situation he operation IAW the operation order and			
13. The conce the object. The compact of the compact of the compact of the compact of the consolidate of the				
a.	the chain of command is confirmed and / or re-established			
b.	the company status and tactical situation are reported to the higher HQ IAW SOPs			
c.	all-round defence is established and elements are positioned to cover enemy routes of counter-attack and infiltration into the objective area if consistent with the commander's intent			
d.	the objective buildings are marked IAW SOPs to indicate that they have been cleared			
e.	casualties are treated and evacuated			
f.	resupply is carried out as required			
g.	the company prepares to support follow-on operations and / or continues its assigned mission.			

4006 C - WOODS CLEARING

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

While moving as a part of a larger force, the platoon identifies a small wooded area forming part of an enemy defensive position. The platoon is ordered to conduct woods clearing. The platoon and enemy elements have indirect fire available.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon clears the wooded area by killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy. The platoon continues follow-on operations.

Sub-Tasks and Standards						Ineff	
1.	1. The platoon commander organizes the platoon:						
a	ι.	cut-of	f group:				
		(1)	section LMG weapons detachments				
		(2)	platoon APCs to provide cut-off, or to provide fire support for the sweep and assault groups				
		(3)	commanded by platoon 2IC				
b) .	sweep	group:				
		(1)	one or two sections				
		(2)	commanded by section commander, or platoon commander if more than one section				
c	: .	assaul	t group:				

		Sub	-Tasks	and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		(1)	compo	osed of the remaining n(s)			
		(2)	any at	tached specialists, such as			
		(3)	comm	anded by the section ander, or platoon commander e than one section			
2.	Plato	on dril	l for wo	ods clearing:			
	a.	plann	ing and	preparation:			
		(1)		attle procedure takes place IAW TS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure'			
		(2)		latoon commander must complete a econnaissance to determine:			
			(a)	likely enemy lines of withdrawal			
			(b)	shape of the woods and direction to clear it			
			(c)	possible killing zones			
			(d)	positions for cut off groups			
			(e)	wind, if smoke is to be used			
		(3)	minim reorga	chearsed drill which requires num of orders and nization must be used to re the necessary speed			
		(4)	than o	eep must be thorough, so more ne sweep in thick woods may essary			

	Sub-	Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(5)	the sweep should drive the enemy into a killing zone outside the wooded area, or force the enemy to withdraw			
b. 0	deploy	ment of cut off group(s):			
	(1)	under platoon 2IC, move to concealed positions using covered approaches, to cover all exits from the woods. APCs are used if available, however their vulnerability must be considered			
	(2)	security teams can be employed on exposed flanks to guard against their being attacked while covering the chosen killing zone			
	(3)	they engage anyone emerging from the woods before the success signal is given			
c. §	gainin	g a lodgment:			
	(1)	remainder of platoon will use fire and manoeuvre to gain entry into the edge of the woods, by deliberate attack if necessary. A mechanized platoon remains mounted up to and around the woods, when speed is more important, then dismounts			
	(2)	platoon reorganizes into sweep and assault groups			
((3)	sweep group forms an extended line across the front of the platoon, the flanks of the group just inside the			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		woodline			
	(4)	the assault group remains one tactical bound (as little as 15-20m in thick woods) behind the centre of the sweep group, ready to attack on either flank			
d.	sweep	oing the woods:			
	(1)	on the order to advance, the sweep group moves forward by team fire and movement, depending on the ground, with the leading soldier searching the ground while the team partner observes and listens, looking up into the trees			
	(2)	the assault group focuses upward on the trees for snipers and directional mines, and to the rear			
	(3)	the pace is as fast as the slowest team			
	(4)	if the sweep group has to halt, all take up fire positions to observe and listen			
	(5)	cleared ground is observed by the assault group			
	(6)	flanks of the sweep group must indicate progress to the cut off groups by hand signal, but not to expose themselves outside the woodline			
	(7)	when sweep group reaches the end of the wood it must not emerge until			

	Sub	-Tasks	and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
			ss or the all clear signal is to the cut off groups			
	(8)	all mo	evement is as silent as possible			
e.	action	on me	eeting the enemy:			
	(1)	if eng	aged at very close range			
		(a)	the portion of the sweep group under effective fire should rush the enemy returning fire and, having dealt with the enemy, take cover in line, shout 'Clear' and observe			
		(b)	meanwhile, the remainder of the sweep group and the assault group not under effective fire take cover and observe			
		(c)	on hearing 'Clear,' the platoon commander will order the advance to continue			
	(2)	if eng	aged beyond 30m:			
		(a)	the entire sweep group takes cover and those who can see the enemy return fire			
		(b)	the platoon commander will order the assault group to attack, or execute a platoon attack			
		(c)	the assault group attacks from the centre towards one of the			

	Sub	-Tasks	and S	standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
				s in order to push the y into a killing zone			
		(d)	the pl	atoon commander must:			
			i.	resist the dislocation of his sweeps			
			ii.	limit each objective			
			iii.	employ the assault group against the furthest enemy positions			
			iv.	ensure that constant observation is maintained			
	(3)			of fire must be minimize fratricide			
	(4)	throw	n accu	only used if they can be rately into a hole or nearby soldiers are under			
	(5)			and PWs are to be to the assault group			
f.	conso	lidation	1:				
	(1)	clears	the ed	eep group reaches and ge of the woods, the al is given			
	(2)	platoo	n mov	atoon commander, the es to a pre-planned RV, he cut off group(s)			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
(3) the cut off group(s) rejoins the platoon at the RV			
(4) the platoon consolidates IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate'			
(5) the platoon commander sends a report to higher HQ			
(6) continues the mission			

4007 C/D - AMBUSH

ELEMENT: PL/COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is directed to conduct an ambush along a suspected enemy route. The enemy is suspected to be detachment or section size. The enemy is operating along lines of communications or avenues of approach, in detachment to company size units, and can be reinforced with similar units, air support and indirect fire.

TASK STANDARD:

The ambush is set not later than the time specified in the order. The specified purpose of the ambush is accomplished IAW the commander's intent. The platoon / company kills, captures, or destroys enemy personnel / equipment during the ambush. The platoon / company obtains all PIR, withdraws from the ambush, and suffers no casualties from friendly fire.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		mbush commander completes battle			
proced	lure I <i>A</i>	AW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure.'			
		mbush commander develops an ambush cally to include:			
	a.	security, assault and support elements			
1	b.	selects a tentative ambush formation or, for area ambushes, element locations or sectors and a scheme of manoeuvre which will maximize engagement of the enemy's flank or rear			
	c.	establishes criteria for initiation of ambush			
	d.	develops primary and alternate signals for			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		initiation of ambush			
	e.	distributes information on target engagement techniques			
	f.	develops a plan for assault element action in the killing zone			
	g.	establishes a withdrawal plan.			
3.	The a	ambush moves to an ORV:			
	a.	conducts a passage of lines IAW BTS <u>4302</u> , 'Passage of Lines'			
	b.	moves IAW BTS 4308, 'Move Tactically.'			
4. IAW Hide.	BTS 4	establishes an assembly area (if applicable) 4309 'Occupy Assembly Area / Harbour /			
5. group		ambush commander and his reconnaissance			
	a.	conduct the reconnaissance undetected			
	b.	select security positions that provide early warning of enemy approach			
	c.	selects a killing zone that restricts enemy manoeuvre on the ambush site			
	d.	select positions that permit observation and effective fire into the killing zone			
	e.	select an assault position that provides observation, cover and concealment and is close enough for rapid assault into the kill zone			
	f.	selects positions large enough for all			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	personnel and fighting positions			
g.	select primary and alternate covered and concealed routes to and from all positions			
h.	maintains observation of the killing zone			
i.	returns to the assembly area undetected.			
	ised on the reconnaissance, the ambush ler confirms or modifies the ambush plan:			
a.	modifications to the ambush plan are immediately disseminated to subordinates commanders			
b.	subordinates commanders acknowledge receipt of the modified order and disseminate changes to all personnel.			
	be security element moves from the assembly occupies a covered and concealed position:			
a.	move into position using the appropriate movement technique			
b.	element commander designates sectors of observation and arcs of fire for individuals and primary weapon systems			
c.	designated personnel set mines, obstacles and early warning devices, as the threat dictates			
d.	element commander occupies a position to control their elements			
e.	element commander checks all target acquisition and night observation devices			
f.	element commander maintains			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		communications with ambush commander			
	g.	the occupation and establishment of the element position is undetected by the enemy			
	h.	element commander reports to the ambush commander when the position is established.			
8. assem positi	ably are	ea and occupy covered and concealed			
	a.	move after security element is in place			
	b.	elements move on order			
	c.	the ambush commander, company FC (if available) position themselves for best control			
	d.	element commanders maintain communication with the ambush commander.			
9.	The a	mbush prepares the ambush site:			
	a.	element commanders confirm sectors of observation and fire for individual and primary weapon systems			
	b.	designated personnel set mines, obstacles and early warning devices, as the threat dictates			
	c.	element commanders check the ambush site from the enemy side to verify concealment, if possible, and if ground and concealment permit			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	d.	element commanders check all target acquisition and night observation devices			
	e.	the occupation and establishment of the ambush site is undetected by the enemy			
	f.	element commanders report to the ambush commander when the site established.			
10. 'Mair		umbush employs OPSEC IAW BTS 3001 perations Security':			
	a.	camouflage, noise and light discipline are enforced			
	b.	security element is alert and using all available observation devices			
	c.	radio silence is enforced.			
11. alerts		n the security element detects the enemy, it abush commander:			
	a.	as a minimum, the security element reports the size of the enemy force, the direction of movement, and any special weapons or equipment carried			
	b.	the security element commander alerts the ambush upon receipt of the report			
	c.	if the enemy is moving to attack the ambush, the security element engages the enemy. The ambush commander manoeuvres the other elements, or employs a reserve to deal with the enemy as required and protect the remaining elements of the ambush			
	d.	if the enemy is too large, does not enter the killing zone or has too many manoeuvre			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		elements remaining outside the killing zone, the ambush commander does not initiate the ambush. If the enemy does not detect the ambush site, the ambush commander allows them to pass, reports the force to the higher commander, and awaits further orders			
	e.	if any element of the ambush is detected, it engages the enemy and alerts the ambush commander			
	f.	if the enemy enters the killing zone and falls within the engagement criteria, the ambush is initiated.			
12.	The a	ambush is executed:			
	a.	the ambush commander initiates the ambush or authorizes a subordinate to initiate the ambush			
	b.	the ambush is initiated with the largest casualty-producing weapon available. If ambushing mounted or armoured elements, the ambush is initiated with multiple, simultaneous anti-armour shots			
	c.	assault and support elements deliver fire with the heaviest, most accurate volume possible			
	d.	all weapons engage targets suitable to their characteristics			
	e.	the security element blocks any enemy attempts to manoeuvre and engages, blocks reinforcement of the enemy in the killing zone, and blocks escape from the killing			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		zone.			
13. suppo	The a	ambush uses artillery and other indirect fire ems:			
	a.	suppresses and kills the enemy			
	b.	isolates the enemy by blocking reinforcements			
	c.	when resistance in the killing zone ends, the ambush commander orders lifting or shifting of all fire and prepares for the assault on the target			
	d.	on the ambush commander's signal, the support element lifts or shifts all supporting fire IAW the ambush commander's orders.			
	nander	olicable, IAW the order, SOP or ambush 's signal, the assault element assaults into the before the enemy can react effectively.			
15.	The a	ambush element withdraws from the ambush:			
	a.	on order, or upon completion of action in the killing zone, the assault element withdraws to a designated ORV			
	b.	the support element covers the withdrawal of the assault element from the killing zone			
	c.	the assault element accounts for all personnel and reports to the ambush commander			
	d.	the other elements withdraw to the ORV designated in the order			
	e.	the ambush commander uses planned indirect fire to assist and cover the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards							
	withdrawal, or to complete the destruction of the enemy.							
	16. The ambush consolidates at the designated ORV, collating and disseminating intelligence:							
a.	the ambush moves from the ORV as soon as all elements report their personnel and equipment accounted for to the ambush commander							
b.	handle PWs IAW BTS <u>6004</u> , 'Handle PWs and Detainees'							
c.	the ambush commander reports the results of the ambush and status to the higher CP IAW SOPs, or orders, and continues the mission as directed by the higher commander.							

4011 C - SUPPORT AN ATTACK ON A FORTIFIED POSITION

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is supporting a company, which has a mission to attack a fortified position, and has designated support, breach, and assault forces. The attack occurs in daylight or darkness under all weather conditions. Protective obstacles require a dismounted assault.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon creates one lane per assaulting infantry platoon through wire obstacles, and destroys fighting positions with demolitions to maintain the momentum of the attack. Note: The initial breach of the obstacle is performed by an infantry rifle section or platoon.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. IAW I					
prepar					
	a.	task organizes the platoon and equipment to support the assault force ensuring that each assaulting infantry platoon is supported by a pioneer section			
	b.	identifies one pioneer section as the reserve			
	c.	ensures pioneer sections prepare lane marking stores			
	d.	ensures pioneer sections prepare demolition charges (eg. cutting or breaching charges, and bangalore torpedoes) and tools (eg. mine detectors, prodders, shovels, wire cutters, etc)			
	e.	ensures pioneer sections dress in			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		appropriate protective clothing and carry white smoke grenades for self-screening when breaching is required during the assault			
	f.	coordinates with the company commander to determine the platoon's position in the combat formation			
	g.	Note: The platoon commander must be completely knowledgeable of the manoeuvre unit's pioneer SOPs.			
2. area:	The	platoon conducts actions in the assembly			
	a.	conducts pre-combat checks with emphasis on breaching equipment and demolition charges			
	b.	links up with the combat team			
	c.	conducts detailed rehearsals with the combat team.			
3. the fin		platoon manoeuvres with the company onto sault position:			
	a.	responds / takes appropriate action as directed by the company commander IAW the manoeuvre unit SOP			
	b.	the platoon commander ensures the platoon and equipment is positioned well forward and integrated into assault forces' combat formations			
	c.	the platoon commander advises the company commander on the best location to bypass or breach the protective			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff			
	obsta	cle(s).				
			orts the assault force by ostacles along the attack axis:			
a.	create	s lanes	in enemy protective obstacles:			
	(1)	locate	ne platoon commander remains co- ocated with the company ommander in a position to best offluence the assault			
	(2)		es a minimum of one lane per lting infantry platoon			
	(3)	the in	fantry platoon commander:			
		(a)	determines a breach point and advises the pioneer element			
		(b)	designates one section as the fire base to suppress the enemy			
		(c)	gives instructions for lifting and shifting fire			
		(d)	designates one section as the breach section, and the remaining section as the assault section			
		(e)	the breach section, including the pioneer element, prepares for the breach			
	(4)	the br	each is executed:			
		(a)	the fire base section initiates fire support			

	Sub	-Tasks	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		(b)	the rifle platoon commander leads the breach and assault sections to the breach point			
		(c)	the breach section probes the obstacle using explosives, if required, to breach the obstacle			
		(d)	marks all mines and trip wires			
		(e)	the assault is executed by the assault section,, with maximum suppressive fire from the fire base and breach sections			
	(5)	pione lanes	the assault has taken place, the er platoon widens the assault to enable the F and A echelon les to move to the assault on.			
b.	marks obstac		ne(s) through the protective			
c.	guide lanes	the A	echelon vehicles through the			
d.	of the	lane(s	commander reports the location and obstacles to the company e unit SOP.			
	5. The platoon supports the assault force in clearing trench systems and knocking out bunkers / fortifications:					
a.	-		conducts fire and movement avre element			
b.	pione	er secti	ons join assaulting infantry			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		platoons and destroy enemy fighting positions with demolitions, satchel charges, and pole charges			
	c.	the platoon neutralizes booby-traps found on the objective.			
6.	The p	platoon prepares to continue the mission.			
7.	The p	platoon consolidates and reorganizes:			
	a.	re-establishes the chain of command			
	b.	establishes local security in coordination with company			
	c.	provides support (survivability and counter- mobility) to the manoeuvre unit's hasty defence using platoon equipment and basic load			
	d.	re-distributes ammunition and weapons			
	e.	treats and evacuates casualties			
	f.	searches, silences, segregates, safeguards, and sends prisoners to collection points when the situation permits			
	g.	provides situation reports to higher HQ.			

14071 C - CLEAR TRENCH SYSTEM

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is attacking as part of a larger force and identifies enemy in a trench system. The platoon commander determines that he has sufficient combat power to manoeuvre and assault the trench system.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon kills, captures, or forces the withdrawal of the enemy in its assigned section of the trench system.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. clear		platoon commander organizes the platoon to nch system:			
	a.	designates an assault section and a fire base			
	b.	designates the assault section to enter the trench and secure a foothold			
	c.	designates the entry point of the trench system and the direction of movement once the platoon begins clearing			
	d.	informs the platoon 2IC to position the fire base (personnel, machine guns, APCs) to suppress the trench and isolate the entry point			
	e.	calls for artillery and smoke.			
2. assau	The a	assault section commander organizes the on:			
	a.	directs one fire group to assault and one fire			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
			to support by fire initially, then v and support the assaulting fire group				
	b.	design syster	nates the entry point of the trench m.				
3. section			section commander orders the assault the assault:				
	a.		s the assault section to the last covered oncealed position short of the entry				
	b.	the en	irects a fire group to shift fire away from the entry point and continue to suppress djacent enemy positions or isolate the trench as required				
	c.	position his gr	ons himself where he can best control oups				
	d.	signal	signals the assault group to enter the trench:				
		(1)	the assault section commander and half of the assault group remain in a position short of the trench to add suppressive fire for the initial entry				
		(2)	two personnel of the assault group continue toward the entry point. They move in rushes or by crawling				
		(3)	upon reaching the edge of the trench, throw a grenade into the trench system				
		(4)	after ensuring that the grenade detonates, the two personnel enter the trench system. They fire their weapons down the trench system in				

	Sub-	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		opposite directions			
	(5)	immediately, they clear in opposite directions until reaching the first corner or intersection. Each soldier halts and takes up a position to block any enemy movement toward the entry point			
	(6)	the assault section commander directs the remaining assault group to one of the secured corners or intersections to relieve the riflemen			
	(7)	the assault section commander remains at the entry point and reports to the platoon commander that he has entered the trench system and secured a foothold			
	(8)	marks the entry point.			
		commander follows the success of the old with the remainder of the platoon:			
a. 1	reorga	nizes the sections, as necessary			
b. 1	redistr	ributes the ammunition.			
base sections	to mo	commander directs one of the fire ve into the trench system and begin ction of movement from the foothold:			
		tions the fire base as necessary to ue suppressive fire			
	moves section	s into the trench with the assaulting n.			
6. The sec	ection o	commander of the assaulting section			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	rols the actions of his section as it passes the section ring the foothold:				
a.	designates a lead fire group and a trail fire group				
b.	moves with the lead fire group to the forward most secure corner or intersection and tells the securing group that his section is ready to pass through and continue clearing				
c.	ensures the trail fire group follows and maintains visual contact with the last soldier of the lead group. Note: Throughout this technique, the group commander positions himself at the rear of the fire group to have direct control (physically, if necessary) of his personnel. Other personnel in the fire group rotate the lead. Personnel rotate the lead to change magazines and prepare grenades. Rotating the lead provides constant suppressive fires down the trench and maintains the momentum of the attack as the section clears the trench system				
d.	passes the lead group through the element securing the foothold.				
7. The loof movement	ead fire group starts clearing in the direction at:				
a.	moves to the next corner, the second rifleman throws a grenade around the corner				
b.	moves around the corner as a group after the grenade explodes, following the lead				

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		soldier to the next corner or intersection.			
8. fire g		ection commander follows behind the lead			
	a.	ensures that the trailing fire group moves up and is ready to pass the lead at his direction			
	b.	rotates the fire groups as necessary to keep the soldiers alert and to maintain the momentum of the attack			
	c.	requests indirect fires, if necessary, through the platoon commander			
	d.	ensures the trailing fire group secures intersections and marks the route within the trench as the section moves forward			
	e.	reports the progress of the clearing to the platoon commander.			
9. progr		platoon commander controls and supports the the clearing action:			
	a.	rotates sections to keep personnel alert and to maintain the momentum of the assault			
	b.	calls the platoon 2IC to forward ammunition resupply and to organize groups to move it into the trench			
	c.	ensures the platoon 2IC moves friendly forces into the trench only through the designated entry point			
	d.	reports to the company commander that the trench system is secured, or that his platoon is no longer able to continue clearing.			

I4072 C - CLEAR BUNKER

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

While moving as a part of a larger force, the platoon identifies the enemy in a bunker complex. The platoon is ordered to secure and clear a portion of the bunker complex. The platoon and enemy elements have indirect fire available.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon destroys the designated bunker by killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of the enemy in the bunker.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. If engaged, the platoon reacts IAW BTS 5005, 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire':			
a. establishes a fire base with the section in contact			
b. the platoon commander, moves forward to link-up with the section commander of the lead section in contact:			
(1) uses a covered and concealed route			
(2) directs the platoon 2IC to move forward to provide a fire base			
(3) calls for and adjusts indirect fire on the enemy position.			
2. If not engaged, the platoon commander makes an estimate of the situation to determine where the platoon can manoeuvre:			
a. identifies enemy bunkers, other supporting			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		positions, and any obstacles			
	b.	determines the size of the enemy force (the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fire are indicators of enemy strength)			
	c.	identifies a vulnerable flank of at least one bunker			
	d.	identifies a covered and concealed route to the flank of that bunker.			
3. is to 1	3. The platoon commander determines which bunker is to be assaulted first:				
	a.	directs one section not in contact to knock out the bunker using anti-armour weapons			
	b.	instructs the fire base to reposition the fire base to isolate the next bunker and continue suppressive fire			
	c.	accompanies assault section.			
4.	The f	ire base begins to suppress the enemy:			
	a.	destroys or suppresses enemy crew-served weapons first			
	b.	obscures the enemy position with smoke			
	c.	sustains suppressive fire			
	d.	shifts indirect fire as the platoon continues.			
5. section		assault section commander leads the assault nst the bunker:			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a.	move	s along a covered and concealed route			
b.		aches the bunker from its blind side oes not mask the fire of the fire base			
c.		antly watches for other bunkers or y positions in support of it			
d.		acts the assault upon reaching the last ed and concealed position:			
	(1)	directs a fire group and the automatic rifleman to remain in place and add their fires to suppress the bunker (includes the use of SRAAW (L) and (H))			
	(2)	the section commander positions himself where he can best control his groups. On the section commander's signal, the fire group lifts fire or shifts fire to the opposite side of the bunker from the assaulting group's approach			
	(3)	the assault group continues to move forward to the blind side of the bunker. One soldier takes up a covered position near the exit, while the other soldier posts a grenade through an aperture			
	(4)	after the grenade detonates, the soldier covering the exit enters the bunker, firing short bursts, to destroy the enemy. (The soldier who posts the grenade should not be the first one to clear the bunker)			
	(5)	the section commander inspects the			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		bunker to ensure that it has been destroyed and marked. He reports, reorganizes as needed, and continues the mission.			
6. again		platoon follows the success of the attack punker:			
	a.	continues the attack of other bunkers as directed by the platoon commander			
	b.	shifts indirect fire as the platoon continues.			
7. of the	The performance fire based on the performance of th	platoon commander directs the repositioning ase:			
	a.	continues to isolate and suppress the remaining bunkers			
	b.	maintains suppressive fire.			
8. to ma		platoon commander reorganizes the platoon the momentum of the attack:			
	a.	redesignates one of the fire base sections to move up, and seize or destroy the next bunker, or			
	b.	directs the assaulting section to continue and seek out the next bunker. Note: The platoon commander must consider the condition of the assaulting section (ammunition and exhaustion) and rotate sections as necessary			
	c.	ensures the assaulting section follows the same procedures listed above when knocking out the next bunker.			
9.	The p	platoon commander directs the actions of the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
platoon once	e it has cleared its assigned portion of the			
bunker com	plex:			
a.	reports to the company commander			
b.	reorganizes as necessary IAW BTS <u>4305</u> , 'Consolidate'			
c.	passes another platoon from the company through to continue the attack as required			
d.	prepares to continue the mission.			

14073 C/D - CONDUCT AIRMOBLIE OPERATIONS

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is required to conduct an airmobile operation in any phase of war. Both friendly and enemy forces have available indirect fire and close air support (CAS) available. Enemy air defence, NBC, and EW threats exist. Air parity exists.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company successfully plans and prepares to participate in an airmobile operation within the time specified in orders. Platoon / company personnel and equipment are prepared for movement at the time and place specified. The platoon / company loads the aircraft at the pick-up zone (PZ) and sufficient numbers of commanders, personnel, and key equipment arrive at the landing zone (LZ) in order to accomplish the mission.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards				
1.		platoon / company commander completes dure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
Dattie	proced	dule IAW B13 1001, Battle Flocedule.			
2. follow		olatoon / company commander considers the			
	a.	action at the objective			
	b.	must conduct final coordination and briefings once the platoon / company and equipment marry-up with aircraft			
	c.	rehearsals must be conducted			
	d.	contingency plans for alternate action must be prepared:			

		Sub-	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		(1)	loss of aircraft enroute			
		(2)	deception			
		(3)	any part of the mission fails			
		(4)	reduction in available aircraft			
		(5)	aircraft are not able to use LZ(s)			
		(6)	requirement for troop extraction.			
		n the al	/ company commander organizes the llowable cargo loads as stated in			
	a.	_	ates clear command relationships and commanders			
	b.		ains tactical integrity (keeps sections cams together on the same aircraft)			
	c.	guns, a	nins self-sufficiency (keeps machine anti-armour, and their crews on the nircraft with ammunition and onents)			
	d.		loads key personnel and weapons g the aircraft			
	e.		nate and mark mission essential ment, and rucksacks.			
4. perso			/ company commander briefs licopter landing formation:			
	a.		ns them of primary and alternate PZs, and RVs			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	informs them of the type of aircraft			
	c.	informs them of the allowable cargo load of aircraft			
	d.	informs them of the contingency plan for downed aircraft, for personnel on the aircraft and the remainder of the unit.			
5. chalk		halk commanders brief personnel in the			
	a.	inform them when to load and where to sit on the aircraft			
	b.	inform them of emergency procedures to be used in an emergency			
	c.	inform them of what to do when the aircraft lands.			
6. priori		platoon / company commander establishes the pading:			
	a.	designates the priority of aircraft loads			
	b.	designates personnel to be bumped, if necessary, on each aircraft			
	c.	ensures bumped personnel, if any, are told to report to the straggler control point			
	d.	ensures that each aircraft is loaded so that dismounting personnel can react promptly and contribute to mission accomplishment.			
7. equip SOP.		platoon / company members prepare the or loading IAW the platoon / company / unit			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
8. The p				
assigned por				
load the aircraft:				
a.	remain dispersed, covered, and concealed while awaiting the aircraft's arrival			
b.	approach aircraft only after landing is completed			
c.	approach aircraft, front or side, at double- time. WARNING: Never approach aircraft from the rear			
d.	load at the time specified in the orders			
e.	keep low when approaching and departing a helicopter, especially on slopes.			
9. Load	ing:			
a.	grouping and marshalling of the platoon / company occurs in the assembly area			
b.	assault force must be grouped to achieve balance of force and concentration of fire, to land maximum combat power at H hour			
c.	tactical cross-loading of key personnel and equipment must avoid critical operational losses from a single aircraft being destroyed			
d.	platoon / company moves to the PZ in aircraft loads to meet the aircraft			
e.	loading is completed as quickly as possible to reduce the vulnerability of the force			
f.	fire support must be coordinated to mask			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		any movement during the operation.			
10. the pl		commanders enforce safety measures IAW / company SOP:			
	a.	keep safety belts fastened when airborne (training)			
	b.	ensure weapons are on SAFE			
	c.	secure radio antennas			
	d.	secure hand grenades.			
11. aircra		commanders ensure the soldiers dismount the it lands:			
	a.	prevent soldiers from jumping from a hovering helicopter until directed to do so by a member of the aircraft crew			
	b.	move the personnel out about 20 meters from the side of the aircraft and assume prone firing positions, facing outward.			
	c.	watch for enemy and wait for aircraft to leave			
	d.	move to the assigned positions to provide all-round security			
	e.	evacuate any casualties that occur, on departing aircraft.			
12.	Grou	nd tactical phase:			
	a.	the assault echelon secures the LZ if it is not already secured by pathfinders or fire support, or an alternate site must be			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	selected			
b.	H hour begins at which time the first helicopter of the assault echelon lands			
c.	sufficient troops arrive to accomplish the mission			
d.	if an assault is required, it is done quickly to retain surprise			
e.	use is made of fire support to neutralize all threats			
f.	action at the objective is completed IAW the applicable BTS, usually a <u>raid</u> at the company level			
g.	once the objective is secured, the platoon / company must either consolidate, prepare for the defence, conduct a link-up, or be extracted IAW orders.			
13. The p	olatoon / company proceeds with its mission			

14074 B - CONDUCT SNIPER MISSION

ELEMENT: SNIPER TEAM

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The sniper team is given a specific mission (target criteria and priority), either by a supporting unit or by acting independently. The sniper team must move, observe, select, and destroy a target within 300-800m of the target area. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect and close air support (CAS) available.

TASK STANDARD:

The sniper team moves undetected along a specified route, arriving at a specified time and location. The team occupies a firing position undetected. The sniper team observes, selects, and destroys the target within two rounds. The sniper team sustains no casualties.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	The s	sniper team selects the movement routes that:			
	a.	avoids known enemy positions and obstacles			
	b.	offers cover and concealment			
	c.	takes advantage of difficult terrain, swamp and dense woods			
	d.	avoids natural lines of drift			
	e.	avoids footpaths, tracking traps, or built-up areas.			
2. and r	2. The sniper team uses proper movement techniques and maintains operation security:				
	a.	moves slowly and cautiously			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	avoids making sounds.			
3. proce	The s dures:	niper team maintains proper communication			
	a.	maintains radio silence			
	b.	uses visual signals.			
4. target		niper team identifies the following priority will limit the enemy's fighting ability:			
	a.	enemy sniper			
	b.	officers, both military and political			
	c.	NCMs			
	d.	reconnaissance team			
	e.	crew-served weapon personnel			
	f.	vehicle commanders and drivers			
	g.	communication personnel			
	h.	forward observers			
	i.	critical equipment such as optical sights or radios.			
5. has:	The s	niper team selects a final firing position that			
	a.	maximum fields of firing and observation of the target area			
	b.	maximum concealment from enemy observation			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	c.	covered routes into and out of the position			
	d.	not closer than 300m to the target			
	e.	a natural or man-made obstacle, if available, between the sniper team and the target area			
6.	Main	tain operations security by avoiding:			
	a.	roads and trails			
	b.	prominent features			
	c.	objects that make noise			
	d.	optical devices that may reflect light			
	e.	leaving a path			
	f.	tracking traps.			
7.	The son by:	sniper team occupies and operates from a			
	a.	using shadows			
	b.	using camouflage			
	c.	moves into the position undetected			
	d.	scans ahead and watches for overhead movement			
	e.	keeps the body outline low to the ground			
	f.	organizes the equipment			
	g.	establishes a system of observation and relief.			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
8. engaş					
	a.	selects the target that is critical to the mission			
	b.	does not become a target while searching for or firing on an enemy target			
	c.	estimates range from the target between 300 to 800m			
	d.	engages the target or continues to observe.			
9.	The s	sniper team engages the target:			
	a.	adjusts for wind			
	b.	adjusts the scope on the target			
	c.	sniper fires			
	d.	watches the swirl and the strike of the round			
	e.	adjusts if necessary and engages again within five seconds			
	f.	engages subsequent targets if undetected.			
10. execu		sniper team continues with the mission or extraction plan.			

DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS

4101 B/C/D - DEFEND

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The enemy is expected to attack mounted or dismounted with forces up to battalion strength supported by attack helicopters, indirect fire and close air support, but not until at least 18 hours after receipt of the battle group orders. The enemy can be reinforced with up to company size units. Enemy reconnaissance elements can be expected to gain information on the element's activities. The element is defending battle positions as part of a larger force area defence, or is assigned a separate sector in a mobile defence. The element will receive information provided by covering troops.

TASK STANDARD:

The element completes all preparations directed by the higher commander no later than the time specified in orders. The element decisively engages the enemy. The element destroys, blocks, delays, or canalizes the enemy into the destruction area IAW orders. The element denies and prevents penetration of specified boundaries or terrain

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The element commander conducts battle			
procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure' and			
develops an outline defensive plan:			
a. identifies enemy avenues of approach and areas of weakness along each (exposure, canalization, slow movement, etc)			
b. the element's protective / tactical obstacles are positioned (refer to BTS 5013, 'Lay /			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	Lift a Protective Minefield')			
c.	contingencies are made to shift fire and forces to any route being used by the enemy (alternate positions and secondary arcs of fire)			
d.	fire control measures and target priorities, are developed to allow fire to be shifted and massed (killing zones, etc)			
e.	anti-armour positions are selected to provide flanking fire on enemy approaches, to provide cover and to allow covered entry/exit			
f.	infantry positions are selected to block enemy mounted / dismounted approaches where infantry is not exposed to stand-off fire and is protected by obstacles from mounted assault			
g.	obvious positions are avoided			
h.	supporting plans are synchronized and coordinated			
i.	control measures identifying sectors, boundaries, battle positions, killing zones and withdrawal routes are established			
j.	read in conjunction with BTS 2002, 'Engage Targets with Main and Secondary Armament,' the element commander coordinates the direct and indirect fire plans with the higher commander, flanking units, and FC (if possible), including adjusted targets forward of positions (when adjustment will not jeopardize surprise) and predicted targets within and behind the			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		positions			
	k.	the element commander tentatively sites obstacles which meet the required obstacle effect (eg. disrupt, turn, fix or block) within any directed obstacle groups assigned to the subunit			
	1.	the plan for the occupation of the positions is developed, work priorities, and allocation of field defence stores			
	m.	a security and counter-reconnaissance plan is developed.			
2. 'Occu		element occupies a hide IAW BTS <u>4309</u> , sembly Area / Harbour / Hide.'			
3.	The e	element occupies the position:			
	a.	vehicles travel along pre-selected, covered and concealed routes			
	b.	vehicles do not stop until reaching the battle position guides			
	c.	primary weapons systems are positioned and fields of fire are established			
	d.	all-round security is established and the counter-reconnaissance plan is implemented			
	e.	OPs, air, and NBC sentries are deployed			
	f.	areas that cannot be observed are patrolled			
	g.	early warning devices are deployed			
	h.	stand-to IAW SOPs is conducted			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	i.	positions are camouflaged using natural cover when available			
	j.	alternate and subsequent positions are reconnoitred			
	k.	the occupation is checked from the enemy point of view when possible			
	1.	rehearsals are conducted and checked from suspected enemy approaches.			
4.	The c	commander checks the position:			
	a.	subordinate commanders go to the front of their positions and reconnoitre the terrain to determine if the positions accomplish assigned tasks			
	b.	positions are adjusted where required for more effective fields of fire			
	c.	positions and fields of fire are checked for dead ground.			
5.	The e	element improves the defence:			
	a.	alternate and secondary positions are improved			
	b.	responsibility for overlapping fire on enemy avenues of approach is established			
	c.	counterattack plans are developed and rehearsed			
	d.	in area defence scenarios, communication trenches are dug between positions, if possible.			
6.	The c	commander sites the element vehicles and			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards						
	to provide effective support, and to be able to ate dumping of ammunition and field defence						
	The commander finalizes and integrates the direct rect fire plans:						
a.	the element fire plan incorporates sub- element submissions						
b.	mutual support and concentration of fire is achieved						
c.	the element is tied-in with adjacent elements						
d.	a copy of the fire plan is provided to all subordinate commanders.						
	The commander coordinates with adjacent, ang, co-located and higher units:						
a.	the locations of primary, alternate and secondary battle and firing positions are coordinated						
b.	information on routes into and out of battle position and routes to the alternate and subsequent positions is exchanged						
c.	indirect fire targets and control measures are identified and coordinated						
d.	the locations of OPs and patrol routes, along with dead ground between elements and how it is to be covered are exchanged						
e.	necessary CEOI information is exchanged						
f.	interlocking and overlapping direct fire is						

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	identified.				
9. plan:	The e	The element emplaces obstacles IAW the barrier			
	a.	if authorization is not already granted, the commander requests and receives clearance to lay protective minefields			
	b.	in built-up areas, obstacles are emplaced to deny approaches underground, through and between buildings, and over rooftops			
	c.	the element covers obstacles by observation and direct fire			
	d.	the closure of lanes through obstacles is planned			
	e.	tactical minefield records are forwarded to higher HQ.			
10.	The e	element stockpiles ammunition and supplies:			
	a.	sufficient field defence stores are stockpiled			
	b.	the locations of stockpiles are reported to all sub-elements			
	c.	the evacuation or destruction of stockpiled supplies is planned.			
11.	Elem	ent conducts defensive operations:			
	a.	IAW commander's intent and mission statement			
	b.	rest and sustainment activities are planned for continuous operations			
	c.	continuous communications with the higher			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		CP are maintained and reports are submitted IAW SOPs			
	d.	enemy is detected and action taken IAW the counter-reconnaissance plan			
	e.	enemy activity is reported to the higher CP IAW SOPs.			
12.	The 6	element defends against an assault:			
	a.	synchronizes direct and indirect fire to complete the assigned mission, separating tanks from infantry fighting vehicles as a priority if defending against a mounted assault			
	b.	executes the barrier plan to impede and canalize the enemy			
	c.	employs smoke to blind enemy observation			
	d.	engages vehicles with primary weapon systems and anti-armour weapons			
	e.	the platoon commander moves elements between primary, alternate and secondary positions to complete the assigned mission			
	f.	anti-armour weapons engage targets by priority IAW orders			
	g.	tanks are engaged by enfilade fire whenever possible.			
13. 'Con	The e	element consolidates IAW BTS <u>4305</u> e.'			
14. assig	14. The element continues to defend IAW the assigned mission.				

4102 C/D - GUARD A RESERVED DEMOLITION

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has been given an order to provide a reserved demolition guard at a critical site in the Authorized Commander's area. (Since reserved demolitions are not normally established at battle group level, the platoon / company will not necessarily establish the demolition guard in its parent battle group's sector). The enemy force will consist of a reinforced tank or motor rifle battalion and / or a heliborne force, each with the specific mission of seizing the reserved demolition site. The enemy will not engage the platoon / company until at least 18 hours after receipt of orders. The platoon / company has been provided with a completed DND 913 Demolition Order. The platoon / company has up to an engineer platoon / section under TACOM to both prepare the demolition to State 1 (SAFE) and to provide the demolition firing party. The engineers have sufficient quantities of explosives and accessories to prepare the demolition. Refugees, stragglers, enemy saboteurs, and the international press are present in the area of operations.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company prevents the enemy from seizing the demolition site intact, or destroying it prematurely, until ordered to execute the reserved demolition orders.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander, as the			
demolition guard commander, conducts battle procedure			
IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure,' and in particular:			
a. plans a continuous all around defence:			
(1) positions sufficient combat power on			
the enemy side of the reserved			
demolition to occupy roadblocks on			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
		approaches leading to the area			
	(2)	positions sufficient combat power on and around the reserved demolition to defend it and the demolitions			
	(3)	positions sufficient combat power on the friendly side of the reserved demolition in locations where they can provide support			
	(4)	plan for a counterattack			
b.		porates any attached units into the sive plan (eg. air defence, MPs, etc)			
c.		for OPs and patrols in order to de early warning			
d.	LZs/I the er	DZs in the area; considers them from nemy perspective, and decides how to deny them or use them to support the			
e.	refug	for the manouevre of units and ees (eg. traffic control points (TCP), ng areas, roadblocks, escorts, nes)			
f.	the re and ir communits.	lishes control points on both sides of served demolition to monitor, control, after the demolition guard nander on the passage of friendly Refer to BTS 5009, 'Establish a block / Checkpoint.'			
		/ company commander and the FOO nd indirect fire support for the			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
missi	on.				
3. demo		platoon / company prepares for the guard task:			
	a.	sets mines and obstacles IAW the commander's plan to disrupt and block enemy movement to include enemy divers			
	b.	marks all lanes through the obstacles			
	c.	ensures establishment of demolition firing points, a main and an alternate on the friendly side, an alternate on the enemy side and others as required by the enemy situation, ground, resources, time available, etc			
	d.	plan and conduct rehearsals.			
4. the de		platoon / company commander coordinates on guard:			
	a.	compares individual copy of the DND 913 Demolition Order with that of the demolition firing party commander to ensure it is correct and complete			
	b.	exchanges information with adjacent commanders on OP locations, patrols, unit signals, enemy routes into the area, terrain and facilities available in the area/lanes through the obstacles			
	c.	places recovery and evacuation assets near and on the friendly side of the reserved demolition to assist in keeping route clear			
	d.	prepares a succession of command for the demolition guard and ensures that a			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		succession of command is also prepared for the firing party			
	e.	ensures communications are maintained with the Authorized Commander.			
5. guard	The p	olatoon / company executes the demolition on:			
	a.	defends the reserved demolition			
	b.	controls the flow of vehicles and personnel to ensure the reserved demolition does not become congested			
	c.	moves units and refugees to designated holding areas to prevent massing at the reserved demolition.			
6. of the		olition guard commander directs demolition yed demolition upon receipt of the order:			
	a.	notifies the firing party commander of the receipt of the order			
	b.	warns friendly units in the area of imminent firing			
	c.	withdraws elements to the friendly side before firing. (The commander may leave some elements on the enemy side until after firing. These elements may be required to continue to provide security until the demolition is fired. The platoon / company commander must plan for their withdrawal after detonation, eg. by assault boat)			
	d.	gives order to fire to the firing party commander			
	e.	executes misfire procedures if the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	demolitions fail to fire			
f.	the firing party commander inspects the reserved demolition to ensure it is completely destroyed and advises the demolition guard commander accordingly			
g.	reports the completion of the mission to the Authorized Commander.			

4103 C - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is operating as a part of a larger defending force in a built-up area and is preparing to defend against a mounted enemy force, which has armour in support. Both friendly and enemy units have indirect fire support available. The platoon will have the required support weapons, appropriate defensive stores and specialized equipment to carry out its task. This will normally include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission-specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon completes all required defensive preparations within the time specified in the operation order and operations security is maintained throughout. The platoon successfully defeats, blocks delays or forces the withdrawal of the enemy force (of proportionate size) in accordance with the commander's intent. The platoon prevents any significant penetration within its boundaries, which will threaten the higher commander's plan and impede freedom of action. Rules of engagement are adhered to.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure,' with particular attention to: a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration given to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including: (1) avenues of approach			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(2) fields of fire and observation			
	(3) obstacles			
	(4) cover and concealment			
	(5) manoeuvre and mobility			
	(6) fire hazard			
	(7) command and control			
	(8) key terrain			
b.	ensuring that effective command, control and coordination measures are established			
c.	providing for adequate protection, dispersion, mutual support and early warning of fighting positions			
d.	establishing killing zones, open fire policy and engagement priorities in accordance with the operation order and / or commander's intent			
e.	establishing the requirement for, and provision of barriers and obstacles			
f.	establishing a counter-attack plan			
g.	establishing a withdrawal plan in accordance with the commander's intent			
h.	conducting liaison with flanking elements specifically to coordinate and / or establish responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach			
i.	providing for ammunition resupply			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
j. providing for the handling of casualties, prisoners of war, and non-combatants.			
2. The platoon commander establishes security of the area and positions the sub-elements including support weapons. Specific arcs responsibility, including alternates, are assigned to element and support weapon commanders.			
3. The platoon command post is positioned in a covered and concealed area and an observation post is established where the platoon commander can observe, control and influence the battle.			
4. The platoon commander ensures that the occupation and development of the defensive position / strong point is completed on time and in accordance with the operation order, special consideration is given to:			
a. establishing security through maintenance of an appropriate state of alert, observation, early warning and patrolling procedures			
b. establishing the priority of work			
c. establishing line communications particularly with observation posts			
d. ensuring adequate protection of each fighting position			
e. ensuring that weapons and positions are sited in depth and are mutually supporting			
f. ensuring that sufficient combat supplies are stocked and adequately stored.			ì
5. The platoon commander ensures that barriers are constructed and obstacles are emplaced to deny the enemy access to streets, underground passages and			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		ncluding rooftops, barriers, and obstacles ered by fire and / or observation.			
	6. The platoon commander develops the counter- attack plan. A reserve force is identified, task-organized and armed appropriately. Considerations include:				
	a.	immediate counter-attack of enemy penetration of strong point(s) before the enemy becomes established			
	b.	identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary			
	c.	day and night rehearsals			
	d.	fighting position reinforcement options.			
7.		withdrawal plan is developed IAW the 's intent. Considerations include:			
	a.	plans for the destruction of buildings and / or denial of equipment in accordance with the operation order			
	b.	identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary			
	c.	order of march			
	d.	day and night rehearsals.			
enem count accou	8. The platoon commander plans and coordinates indirect fires to support the platoon defence. Likely enemy avenues of approach, barriers, obstacles, counterattack and withdrawal plans are taken into account. Defensive fire targets are registered as security, ammunition and authority permit.				
9.	The c	defensive battle is conducted IAW the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
operation or	der and commander's intent. Actions include:			
a.	maintenance of positive command and control by element commanders			
b.	maintenance of communications with the higher headquarters including the provision of situation reports when warranted and / or requested			
c.	use of direct and indirect fire to separate the enemy fighting vehicles from dismounted personnel providing security for the vehicles in accordance with the open fire policy and engagement priorities. Positive control of fire is maintained			
d.	execution of the barrier plan to impede and canalize enemy vehicles and personnel into killing zones			
e.	employment of smoke to blind vehicle crews			
f.	movement of sub-elements, under the direction of the platoon commander, between primary and alternate positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force			
g.	execution of the defensive fire plan to suppress, block or destroy dismounted enemy troop formations			
h.	commitment of the reserve to:			
	(1) exploit success or an enemy weakness			
	(2) support a forward element through			

	Sub	o-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		manoeuvre			
	(3)	assume the mission of another element			
	(4)	defeat, block or repel any enemy penetration			
	(5)	reinforce a fighting position(s)			
	(6)	execution of sustainment activities for continuous operations.			
		on takes place following an enemy 4305, 'Consolidate' with emphasis on:			
a.		nain of command is confirmed and / or lished			
b.		latoon status and tactical situation are ted to the higher HQ IAW SOPs			
c.	_	ng positions, barriers and obstacles are red as necessary			
d.	secur	ity and patrolling activities resume			
e.	casua	lties are treated and evacuated			
f.		unition is redistributed and resupply is ested as required			
g.		efence continues until a change of on is received.			

4103 D - DEFEND IN A BUILT-UP AREA

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company is operating as a part of a larger defending force in a built-up area. The enemy is expected to attack with mounted and / or dismounted forces up to battalion strength, supported by indirect fire and close air support. The company will have the required support weapons, appropriate defensive stores and specialized equipment to carry out its task. This will normally include Engineer / Pioneer support and may include the support of tanks. Appropriate rules of engagement are in effect. Further mission-specific conditions may be applied as deemed relevant.

TASK STANDARD:

The company completes all required defensive preparations within the time specified in the operation order and operations security is maintained throughout. The company successfully defeats, blocks, delays or forces the withdrawal of the enemy force in accordance with the commander's intent. The company prevents and significant penetration within its boundaries which will threaten the higher commander's plan and impede freedom of action. The company retains sufficient combat power to remain effective for follow-on operations. Rules of engagement are adhered to.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The company commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure,' with particular attention to:			
a. conducting a detailed terrain analysis, with due consideration give to the three-dimensional aspects of applicable criteria including:			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(1) avenues of approach			
	(2) fields of fire and observation			
	(3) obstacles			
	(4) cover and concealment			
	(5) manoeuvre and mobility			
	(6) fire hazard			
	(7) command and control			
	(8) key terrain			
b.	establishing effective command, control and coordination measures including sectors, report lines, boundaries and coordinating points			
c.	selecting positions which address the most dangerous threat and which exploit enemy weaknesses			
d.	Providing for adequate protection, depth, dispersion, mutual support and early warning of defensive position / strong points(s)			
e.	establishing killing zones, open fire policy and engagement priorities in accordance with the operation order and / or commander's intent			
f.	establishing the surveillance and target acquisition plan			
g.	establishing the requirement for, and			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	provision of barriers and obstacles			
h.	establishing a counter-attack plan			
i.	establishing a withdrawal plan in accordance with the commander's intent			
j.	conducting liaison with flanking elements specifically to coordinate and / or establish responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach			
k.	providing for adequate resupply arrangements			
1.	providing for the handling of casualties, prisoners of war, and non-combatants.			
2. The company establishes defence of the area. The company commander positions the platoons, integral support weapons and attached elements, and assigns specific arcs of responsibility including alternates.				
covered and established	company command post is positioned in a concealed area and an observation post is where the company commander can observe, influence the battle.			
occupation a strong point	company commander ensures that the and development of the defensive position / (s) is completed on time and IAW the der. Special consideration is given to:			
a.	establishing security through maintenance of an appropriate state of alert, observation, early warning and patrolling procedures			
b.	establishing the priority or work			
c.	establishing line communications between			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		the sub-elements and the company command post			
	d.	ensuring adequate protection of each fighting position			
	e.	ensuring that positions are sited in depth and are mutually supporting			
	f.	ensuring that sufficient combat supplies are stocked and adequately stored.			
enem buildi	ructed a y acces ngs, in	ompany commander ensures that barriers are and obstacles are emplaced to deny the st to streets, underground passages and cluding rooftop. Barriers and obstacles must by fire and / or observation.			
	plan.	ompany commander develops the counter- A reserve force is identified, task-organized ppropriately. Considerations include:			
	a.	immediate counter-attack of enemy penetration of strong point(s) before the enemy becomes established			
	b.	fighting position reinforcement options			
	c.	identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary			
	d.	day and night rehearsals.			
	d mob	ompany may be tasked as the centrally ile reserve of the higher unit. Considerations nclude:			
	a.	plans for counter-attack in assigned priority			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	plans for reinforcement options			
	c.	identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary			
	d.	coordination with adjacent units regarding the exchange of plans and intended use of routes			
	e.	day and night rehearsals.			
8.		withdrawal plan is developed IAW the s intent. Considerations include:			
	a.	plans for the destruction of buildings and / or denial of equipment IAW the operation order			
	b.	identification and maintenance of routes including marking as necessary			
	c.	order of march			
	d.	day and night rehearsals.			
enem attack Defer	9. The company commander plans and coordinates indirect fires to support the company defence. Likely enemy avenues of approach, barriers, obstacles, counterattack and withdrawal plans are taken into account. Defensive fire targets are registered as security, ammunition and authority permit.				
10. opera	10. The defensive battle is conducted IAW the operation order and commander's intent. Actions include:				
	a.	maintenance of positive command and control by element commanders			
	b.	maintenance of communications with the higher HQ including the provision of			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	situation reports when warranted and / or requested			
c.	use of direct and indirect fire to separate the enemy fighting vehicles from dismounted personnel providing security for the vehicles IAW the open fire policy and engagement priorities. Positive control of fire is maintained			
d.	execution of the barrier plan to impede and canalize enemy vehicles and personnel into killing zones			
e.	employment of smoke to blind vehicle crews			
f.	movement of sub-elements, under the direction of the company commander, between primary and alternate positions to complete the destruction or expulsion of the enemy force			
g.	execution of the defensive fire plan to suppress, block or destroy dismounted enemy troop formations			
h.	commitment of the reserve to:			
	(1) exploit success or an enemy weakness			
	(2) support a forward element through manoeuvre			
	(3) assume the mission of another element			
	(4) defeat, block or repel and enemy			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards			Ineff
	penetration			
	(5) reinforce a fighting position(s)			
	(6) execution of sustainment activities for continuous operations.			
	olidation takes place following an enemy BTS 4305, 'Consolidate' with emphasis on:			
a.	the chain of command is confirmed and / or re-established			
b.	the company status and tactical situation are reported to the higher HQ IAW SOPs			
c.	defensive positions, barriers and obstacles are restored as necessary			
d.	security and patrolling activities resume			
e.	casualties are treated and evacuated			
f.	resupply is carried out as required			
g.	the defence continues until a change of mission is received.			

DELAY

4201 C/D - DELAY

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is part of a larger force and participates in a mission to delay. The higher commander's intent is to obtain maximum delay of the enemy while maintaining freedom of manoeuvre. The enemy is up to a motor rifle battalion in size, and is supported by air and indirect fire resources. The delaying force will have 12 hours to deploy and prepare for the operation. The orders will include the minimum length of time the platoon must delay for, or the percentage of the force that must be preserved, the break clean line and the handover line. The platoon will have access to information provided by covering troops. This BTS should be read in conjunction with BTS 3002, 'Screen' and BTS 4202, 'Guard.'

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company delays the enemy for the specified time within the designated boundaries, or sustains no more that the designated percent casualties. The platoon / company maintains contact with the enemy and does not become decisively engaged.

Sub-Tasks and Standards			Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		latoon / company commander conducts			
_		dure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure' and			
in parti	cular	•			
а	1.	identifies initial and subsequent positions			
ł).	includes platoon / company level coordinate measures (phase lines, etc)			
C	C .	identifies general routes between delay			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		positions			
	d.	locates and develops a series of platoon / company delay positions			
	e.	conducts reconnaissance and marks general routes between delay positions			
	f.	may include offensive operations			
	g.	develops the fire plan			
	h.	plans obstacles to slow the enemy advance.			
2.	Logis	stics for the delay is planned:			
	a.	plan evacuation routes			
	b.	plan dumping of fuel and ammunition in designated positions			
	c.	promulgate recovery priorities and criteria for abandonment of vehicles.			
3. delay	-	platoon / company prepares to conduct the			
	a.	prepares / marks routes and subsequent positions			
	b.	conducts reconnaissance and rehearsals			
	c.	constructs a series of defensive positions to fall back to			
	d.	dumps supplies, ammunition and fuel in subsequent defensive positions			
	e.	establishes a series of obstacles at critical choke points and killing zones			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	f.	evacuates non-essential personnel, supplies and equipment (refer to BTS <u>5008</u> , 'Deny Equipment and Supplies')			
	g.	destroys non-essential supplies and equipment, which cannot be evacuated (refer to BTS 5008, 'Deny Equipment and Supplies').			
4.	The p	platoon / company conducts the delay:			
	a.	occupies initial delay positions IAW platoon orders			
	b.	complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in higher orders			
	c.	anti-armour and weapon systems engage the enemy			
	d.	the fire plan is implemented			
	e.	engaged section(s) disengage from the enemy only on order or if IAW the platoon / company commander's intent			
	f.	the platoon / company commander makes timely decisions on disengagement to avoid parts of his force being cut off and destroyed			
	g.	disengaged section(s) / platoon(s) move to subsequent delay positions			
	h.	the remainder of the platoon / company provides fire support for the disengaging element			
	i.	the delaying action continues until the platoon / company reaches the final delay			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	position or the mission is altered by the higher HQ			
j.	the platoon / company is not decisively engaged or bypassed			
k.	the required amount of delay is imposed.			

4202 C/D - GUARD

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is part of a larger force and participates in a guard operation for a specified period of time. It is deployed forward of a designated phase line. A reconnaissance of the area between the main body and the guard force has been conducted. The guard force is in place. Enemy reconnaissance elements are trying to locate the main body. Both the enemy and guard force have indirect fire support available. This BTS should be read in conjunction with BTS 3002, 'Screen,' and BTS 4201, 'Delay.'

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company protects the main body from surprise and direct fire from the enemy. It causes premature deployment and attrition of attacking enemy forces. It does not withdraw to subsequent positions without higher authority. The platoon / company inflicts maximum casualties on the enemy reconnaissance elements, and does not become decisively engaged.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
battle proced	latoon / company commander conducts dure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure,' and lan for the guard:			
a.	the platoon / company commander develops control measures in support of the platoon / company's guard task			
b.	defensive positions are planned to block the most likely approaches			
c.	the defence or delay is organized using the advantages of terrain and weapon systems			

178

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		capabilities			
(d.	the use of artillery and smoke is planned and requested.			
	ation	olatoon / company maintains continuous over its area of operation, and engages the			
	a.	platoon / company elements observe in their designated sectors			
1	b.	OPs report all observed enemy activity IAW SOPs or orders			
	c.	night observation devices are used during limited visibility			
	d.	aggressive patrolling is conducted			
	e.	causes enemy to deploy early			
1	f.	subjects the enemy to heavy casualties			
1	g.	destroys enemy reconnaissance			
1	h.	is prepared to assist in a forward passage of lines for a counterattack force from the main body IAW higher orders			
i	i.	denies the enemy the ability to engage the main body with direct fire			
j	j.	withdraws to successive positions on order from higher authority			
]	k.	provides the main body with reaction time and determines the enemy's disposition			
1	1.	continually updates the main body on the			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
enemy situation.			
3. The platoon / company continually updates the main body on the enemy situation.			

TRANSITIONAL OPERATIONS

4301 B/C/D - ADVANCE TO CONTACT

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is part of a higher unit, and is ordered to conduct an advance to contact. Contact with the enemy has been broken, or has not yet been established.

TASK STANDARD:

The element advances no later than the time specified in orders. Once contact is made, the element maintains contact and takes action IAW orders. The element maintains sufficient combat power to conduct follow-on operations IAW the commander's intent.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The	element commander plans for the advance:			
a.	battle procedure IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure' and prepare sections for combat IAW Section Battle Drill One - 'Prepare for Battle'			
b.	maintain operations security IAW BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations Security'			
c.	considers the time available, speed of advance, enemy situation, and security of the combat team to determine the appropriate formation and grouping			
d.	addresses PIRs			
e.	coordinates the plan with supporting and /			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		or adjacent elements / units as required			
	f.	conduct reconnaissance and post guides along the route to the LD, as required and if authorized in the Op O			
	g.	ensures or determines that LD is secured.			
		element establishes an assembly area, if AW BTS 4309 'Occupy Assembly Area / ide.'			
3. advar		element crosses the LD at H hr and begins the contact:			
	a.	initiates movement on the commander's order			
	b.	moves in the formation designated in the order			
	c.	moves IAW BTS 4308 'Move Tactically.'			
4. The element commander directs the element in the advance to contact, selecting the movement technique and formations (mounted or dismounted) based on the likelihood of enemy contact.					
5. Once contact is made, sections / platoons take immediate action IAW BTS 5005, 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire,' or action is taken IAW Platoon Battle Drill One, 'Reaction to Section coming under effective Enemy Fire.'					
	ned mis	element takes subsequent action IAW its ssion until the enemy is destroyed, or until o otherwise.			

4302 C/D - PASSAGE OF LINES

ELEMENT: PL/COY

ITERATION: 12345 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is required to conduct, or assist in, a passage of lines as either the moving or in-place force. Orders have specified a time when the passage is to be completed. For a forward passage of lines, the force in place will secure the line of departure (LD).

TASK STANDARD:

As the moving force, the element: moves all personnel and equipment through the in-place force no later than the specified time; does not sustain casualties from friendly fire or obstacles; and, does not disrupt the in-place force.

As the in-place force, the element: supports the moving unit in completing the passage of lines within the time specified in orders; and, provides security to ensure neither unit is surprised by the enemy.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The commander receives orders and immediately			
begins planning and coordinating for a passage of lines:			
a. the moving and in-place force commanders or their representatives meet and arrange for a time and location for coordinating the passage			
b. the commander or representative coordinates a reconnaissance.			
2. The commanders or their representatives exchange pertinent information, including:			
a. unit identification			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	size of the unit			
	c.	timings			
	d.	area of operation			
	e.	terrain information			
	f.	known or suspected enemy locations			
	g.	likely enemy killing zones			
	h.	latest enemy activity			
	i.	detailed information on friendly positions			
	j.	obstacle locations			
	k.	fire plan details			
	1.	support the in-place force can provide, such as fire support, guides, communications and a reaction force			
	m.	CEOIs			
	n.	locations of assembly areas, coordination and passage points and attack positions.			
3. passa	The rage of la	noving and in-place forces coordinate the ines:			
	a.	reconnoitre as far forward as the tactical situation permits in order to view the area forward of the FLOT (forward line own troops)			
	b.	discuss the moving force's mission and plan			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	c.	confirm recognition signals			
	d.	identify guides and traffic control measures			
	e.	discuss security measures			
	f.	establish fire support responsibilities and fire plans			
	g.	confirm the process and signals for the transfer of responsibility and action on enemy contact			
	h.	exchange information on lanes and routes			
	i.	exchange information on battle handover lines			
	j.	exchange information on control measures.			
4. other		commanders ensure their reconnaissance and ies do not reveal the operation to the enemy:			
	a.	in-place force activities continue with normal routine throughout the passage			
	b.	movement is rapid and continues through the passage lane.			
5.	Prepa	arations for passage of lines:			
	a.	in-place force designates locations for contingency halts			
	b.	in-place force ensures obstacles are removed from the passage lanes / routes, and lanes / routes are marked			
	c.	the moving force commander issues a contingency plan before moving out to			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		make final coordination arrangements.			
6.	Both	commanders brief their forces:			
	a.	confirm chain of command and control measures which will affect it			
	b.	provide guidance on actions to be taken on contact			
	c.	establish succession of command and conduct back-briefs to ensure subordinate commanders understand the orders			
	d.	provide timings and any limits or restrictions on actions.			
7.	Forw	ard passage of lines:			
	a.	the moving force commander or his representative completes the final coordination with the in-place force commander or his representative			
	b.	the moving force begins movement on time and utilizes the attack position only if necessary			
	c.	both commanders make timely decisions during the passage and facilitate battle handover			
	d.	moving force elements link up with guides and are led through the passage to the release point(s)			
	e.	the moving force moves forward through the release point(s)			
	f.	guides identify and account for all elements			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		passing through the check points and release point(s)			
	g.	sections / platoons are counted through the release point(s) by a moving force representative			
	h.	moving force representatives confirm passwords and tell the guides the number of elements in each section / platoon and how long to wait at the release point(s)			
	i.	movement is continuous throughout the passage			
	j.	moving force representative remains at the release point(s) until the commander indicates that he will not have to withdraw			
	k.	when moving force elements have used separate routes, the moving force may reform by linking up			
	1.	the moving force continues the mission.			
8.	Prepa	are for rearward passage of lines:			
	a.	the commander of the in-place force designates the contact point for coordination			
	b.	at the prescribed time, liaison parties from the two forces meet and exchange information.			
9.	Liais	on teams coordinate and verify information:			
	a.	exchange enemy information			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	exchange recognition signals, and CEOIs			
	c.	make provision for and place guides			
	d.	estimate time of main body arrival and the number and type of vehicles to pass			
	e.	coordinates time or event of battle handover			
	f.	exchange information on minefields and other obstacles			
	g.	coordinate primary and alternate routes			
	h.	exchange information on supporting direct / indirect fire.			
10.	Cond	lucts a rearward passage of lines:			
	a.	after verification that the passage points are occupied, liaison parties make contact at each passage point			
	b.	the moving force passes in order of A echelon, combat support elements, and sections / platoons			
	c.	additional combat power may be given to the in-place force in the form of any of the element's attachments or integral specialist elements			
	d.	the in-place force is notified that friendly forces are at the battle handover line and are en route to the passage point(s) (the battle handover line should be far enough forward to allow the moving unit to move into column, yet close enough to permit support by units along the forward edge of			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	the battle area (FEBA))			
e.	the moving force redeploys into column formation, displays the proper visual signals and orients weapons toward the enemy			
f.	the moving force moves through the passage point(s) to the assembly area without stopping			
g.	the in-place force fires only when positive enemy identification is made			
h.	disabled vehicles are self-recovered, destroyed in place or assisted by other elements, depending on the tactical situation			
i.	in-place forces provide medical assistance, emergency replenishment of combat supplies, and recovery and maintenance assistance if required			
j.	the moving force moves rapidly, minimizing exposure time			
k.	the moving force reports to the in-place force any tactical information concerning the in-place commander's area of responsibility.			

4304 D - BYPASS

ELEMENT: COMPANY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The company performs a tactical move as part of transitional operation. The company encounters an enemy motor rifle platoon (+) in a strongpoint as part of a security force, or as a flank or rear guard. The superior commander's concept requires rapid continuation of the movement and permits bypassing. Bypass routes are available.

TASK STANDARD:

The company bypasses the enemy. The enemy is fixed. It cannot manoeuvre against the company, withdraw, or cause sufficient casualties to prevent the company from carrying on its mission. Less than two platoons are used to fix the enemy.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	The p	platoon commander issues a radio order:			
	a.	as soon as possible after initial contact			
	b.	designates one or more platoons to fix the enemy. If more than one platoon is designated, an overall commander is appointed			
	c.	assigns bypass routes that provide protection from enemy anti-armour weapons and an order of march for each route			
	d.	plans reconnaissance and security of the bypass routes before commitment of the main body			
	e.	specifies instructions to the fixing force to rejoin the company on a signal or event, or			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		to become attached to follow-on units.			
	g force	company fixes the enemy with the designated to prevent manoeuvre against the company, or effective direct fire on the company.			
3.	Comp	pany (-) bypasses:			
	a.	company (-) bypasses			
	b.	bypass is completed within a specified timeframe			
	c.	company resumes tactical movement			
	d.	the enemy force remains fixed.			
	rce des nmende	ixing force passes information to the follow- ignated to destroy the enemy, to include a ed fire base, assembly area and attack			
5. or rej		ixing force links-up with the follow on force, e company IAW the orders.			

4305 C/D - CONSOLIDATE

ELEMENT: PL/COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has assaulted and seized an objective, or repelled an attack. Enemy forces have withdrawn and / or remain on the objective, but are scattered and disorganized. Note that this BTS is an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Seven and Platoon Battle Drill Three, which could be performed under a section, platoon, or company setting.

TASK STANDARD:

All remaining enemy resistance on or close to the objective is destroyed or captured. The platoon / company is prepared to repel an enemy counterattack. Command and control are maintained, security is established, key positions are filled, casualties are treated and evacuated, damaged equipment is recovered and ammunition and supplies are redistributed and replenished. The platoon / company is prepared to continue operations.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Three		on Battle Drill Seven and Platoon Battle Drill asolidation' - are executed.			
2. action		platoon commander develops courses of			
	a.	evaluates the overall situation			
	b.	evaluates dangers on the objective			
	c.	determines the threat potential to the platoon			
	d.	determines when consolidation must be complete in order to prepare for a possible			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		counterattack.			
3. destro		platoon sweeps the objective, and captures or enemy.			
4.		platoon commander maintains command and			
	a.	maintains communications with the higher HQ and adjacent units			
	b.	develops a course of action			
	c.	coordinates the platoon's actions with adjacent units.			
5.	The p	platoon establishes a hasty defensive position:			
	a.	designated anti-armour weapons and personnel occupy firing positions			
	b.	OPs are established			
	c.	the platoon commander and FC update the defensive fire target list			
	d.	platoon emplaces protective minefield and other protective obstacles			
	e.	platoon commander develops engagement criteria			
	f.	platoon sets trip flares and other alarms.			
6.	The p	platoon accounts for personnel:			
	a.	sections determine WIAs, MIAs and KIAs			
	b.	sections report personnel status to the platoon HQ			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	c. the platoon reports its personnel status to the higher HQ.			
7.	Section commanders report status to the platoon nander:			
	a. report casualties and personnel status			
	b. report ammunition and POL status			
	c. report vehicle status			
	d. report communications equipment status			
	e. request items for resupply as required.			
8.	The platoon replaces key losses:			
	a. utilizes personnel from disabled vehicles			
	b. ensures all command positions are filled			
	c. ensures key weapons systems are manned			
	d. submits requests for replacement personne	el.		
9.	The platoon initiates evacuation:			
	a. locates all casualties			
	b. recovers disabled vehicles			
	c. forwards intelligence information and handles PWs.			
10.	The platoon redistributes and replenishes supplie	s.		
11. missi	The platoon commander prepares to continue the on:	;		
	a. makes a map and visual reconnaissance of			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		the terrain between the current position and the next objective			
	b.	issues necessary orders or warning orders as necessary.			
12.	The p	platoon prepares to continue operations:			
	a.	performs maintenance checks and emergency repairs			
	b.	refuels and rearms			
	c.	marks all obstacle breaches and hazards to facilitate the movement of follow on forces.			

4306 C/D - INFILTRATE

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The infiltration is part of a higher commander's concept of operations and plan. The platoon / company must move by stealth from its assembly area to its attack position in an enemy occupied area. It may be required to assault and hold its position until a link-up can be effected, or it may be directed to assault and subsequently withdraw (raid).

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company moves through the enemy area avoiding decisive engagement and reaches the objective without the enemy determining the size of the friendly force.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	e platoon / company commander plans the			
infiltration	1:			
a.	selected covered primary and alternate routes			
b.	establishes checkpoints			
c.	designates RVs that are easily identifiable			
d.	routes avoid built-up areas and areas occupied or covered (or suspected to be occupied and covered) by enemy elements			
e.	establishes sequence of movement			
f.	coordinates indirect fire along infiltration routes			
g.	plans indirect fire on known or suspected			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		enemy positions.			
2.		platoon / company commander selects nethod and routes:			
	a.	the platoon / company conducts reconnaissance patrols to find gaps, weaknesses, routes and positions in the enemy area			
	b.	coordinates for passage of lines with forward unit, if necessary			
	c.	coordinates with units having element forward of the FEBA, as required			
	d.	organizes to facilitate control of the infiltration with the largest elements that can move undetected. Maintains unit and weapon system integrity			
	e.	commanders assign lanes and release points to subordinate elements			
	f.	decide on specific infiltration routes and methods			
	g.	rehearse infiltration methods (using terrain models and walk-through if possible)			
	h.	tailor soldier's loads to the minimum required for the operation			
	i.	make contingency plans for contact with all or part of the infiltrating force before, during and after infiltration			
	j.	designate primary and alternate link-up points for subordinate elements.			
3.	The p	platoon / company commander designates the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
methods of communication:				
a.	considers enemy electronic warfare capabilities in selecting methods			
b.	arranges predetermined signals, minimizing radio traffic			
c.	uses visual signals or messengers to relay information as much as possible.			
4. The p	platoon / company infiltrates:			
a.	maintains communication during movement			
b.	breaks down into infiltrating elements at designated release points			
c.	takes advantage of gaps and weaknesses in enemy positions, limited visibility, bad weather and broken terrain affording cover and concealment			
d.	avoids enemy contact. If contact is made, avoids becoming decisively engaged, breaks contact and continues movement to the platoon / company RV			
e.	ignores ineffective enemy fire			
f.	maintains dispersion and strict noise, light and camouflage discipline			
g.	enforces radio IAW orders			
h.	elements use artillery and related battlefield noise to mask movement			
i.	elements avoid enemy contact by halting and hiding			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
j. elements engage the enemy primarily with indirect fire.			
5. Action at the objective is taken IAW higher commander's orders.			
6. The platoon / company links up IAW BTS 4307, 'Link-up.'			

4307 C - LINK-UP

ELEMENT: PLATOON

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is ordered to link-up with another friendly force in enemy controlled territory. The HQ directing the link-up establishes the boundaries, restricted fire lines (RFL) axis of advance, general linkup point, chain of command, and other control / coordinating measures. Platoon size enemy elements are operating in the area.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon links up at the time and place specified, and receives no casualties from friendly fire.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Based on an estimate of the situation, the platoon commander develops a link-up plan:				
a.	develops a scheme of manoeuvre and control measures (coordination points, phase lines, routes, etc)			
b.	reviews the fire plan			
c.	develops actions at the link-up point and tasks for subordinate section commanders			
d.	constructs contingency plans in the event of enemy contact before, during and after link-up			
e.	identifies tentative primary and alternate link-up sites by map reconnaissance if the link-up sites have not been designated by the higher HQ. Sites are easy to recognize, have cover and concealment, and are			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		defendable / securable			
	f.	provides multiple access and escape routes.			
2. pertir	2. The platoon commander coordinates and obtains pertinent information from the link-up force:				
	a.	verifies frequencies, call signs, codes, visual signals and alternate recognition signals			
	b.	obtains fire coordination measures			
	c.	determines the command relationship with the link-up force (who is in charge if the enemy attacks during/after link-up)			
	d.	coordinates actions following link-up			
	e.	establishes control measures and a RFL as required			
	f.	establishes how long the link-up site will be occupied (either in terms of time or percentage of unit that has arrived).			
3.	The 1	ink-up point is established:			
	a.	the force establishing the linkup sends a security element to locate and secure the link-up point			
	b.	the security element occupies the link-up point by the time stated in the order.			
4.	The s	security element secures the link-up point:			
	a.	establishes security for the link-up point			
	b.	takes up covered and concealed positions to observe the link-up point and await the			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		moving force			
	c.	marks the link-up point with prearranged recognition signals.			
5.	The r	noving force takes action to link-up:			
	a.	the moving force establishes communications with the stationary force, if not under radio silence			
	b.	the moving force commander issues final instructions and contingency plans to the reconnaissance element.			
6. perfo		noving force reconnaissance element e initial link-up:			
	a.	the reconnaissance element commander verifies the link-up point and positions the security element in covered and concealed positions that dominate the link-up point			
	b.	the reconnaissance element commander signals the stationary force			
	c.	the reconnaissance element commander conducts final coordination with the stationary force.			
7.	The r	moving force links up:			
	a.	the moving force reconnaissance element commander guides the stationary force guides to the moving force			
	b.	the stationary force guides alert the main body before guiding the moving force to the stationary force			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	c.	the stationary force guides direct the moving force into its assigned sector of the defensive perimeter			
	d.	the moving force commander coordinates with the stationary force commander and assigns tasks and sectors to his sections based on the coordination.			
8. comn HQ:	command of the commander designated by the higher				
	a.	the designated commander for the entire force establishes and clarifies the chain of command			
	b.	the higher HQ is sent a report of link-up completion.			

4308 B/C/D - MOVE TACTICALLY

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element is operating as part of a larger force and has been ordered to move cross-country, by road or a combination of both. The element is not in contact, but contact is possible. The route along which the element is to move has not been secured by any other force.

TASK STANDARD:

The element moves on the specified route IAW orders, and enemy contact does not disrupt the move, or detract from the element's effectiveness. All relevant information (terrain, obstacles, priority intelligence requirements, etc) is reported. The element minimizes exposure to the enemy, maintains all-round security, and meets prescribed timings.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	element commander conducts battle			
-	AW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure,' with			
emphasis or	1:			
a.	identifies possible enemy locations or			
	avenues of approach			
b.	identifies restrictive terrain, obstacles or			
	areas of NBC contamination			
c.	selects route that provides adequate cover			
	and concealment (unless the route is			
	designated in orders) and that permits the			
	element to meet prescribed timings			
d.	specifies use of waypoints and / or GPS to			
	assist in navigation, if applicable			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	e.	coordinates movement across boundaries if crossing into another unit's area			
	f.	coordinates air defence coverage for the move			
	g.	identifies if a change of NBC posture will be required			
	h.	determines order of march, movement type and formation that will provide the best combination of all round security and speed			
	i.	assumes a position from which the combat team can be most effectively commanded.			
2.	The e	element:			
	a.	makes best use of the terrain to minimize exposure to the enemy			
	b.	uses most effective movement type, formations and positioning of key weapon systems to maintain all round security and speed			
	c.	maintains correct interval and lateral dispersion			
	d.	employs planned control measures and visual signals			
	e.	employs air sentries			
	f.	monitors status and location of friendly forces and disseminates information as necessary			
	g.	IAW orders, establishes and maintains			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		contact with friendly units.			
3.	The e	element takes appropriate action at halts:			
	a.	assumes dispersed positions under cover			
	b.	establishes security			
	c.	checks weapons, equipment and performs maintenance			
	d.	conducts resupply when appropriate.			
4. unsch trails:	eduled	element takes appropriate action at I halts during tactical movement on roads and			
	a.	clears route			
	b.	establishes local security			
	c.	determines the cause of the halt			
	d.	reports unscheduled halt to the commander with as much information as possible about the reason for the halt			
	e.	eliminates the cause of the halt, if possible			
	f.	continues the move when directed by the commander or as soon as possible			
	g.	if applicable, appropriate actions are taken when vehicles become disabled:			
		(1) disabled vehicles are moved off the road, if possible, so that they do not block traffic			
		(2) guides are posted to direct traffic			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		around the vehicle(s), if necessary			
	(3)	ensures local security and radio watch are established			
	(4)	IAW unit SOPs, reports status of the disabled vehicle(s) to the commander			
	(5)	repairs are conducted within capability and the vehicle(s) rejoin the rear of the column.			
		ntering natural and artificial obstacles, the following procedure:			
a.	a. Warning – the element commander attempts to gain as much information about the obstacle as early as possible through higher reconnaissance. If this is not available, lead elements report the obstacle				
b.	into p Maxin to obs	Security – under cover, the element moves into positions of fire and observation. Maximum use is made of available sensors to observe the obstacle and surrounding terrain			
c.	move and so autho	nnaissance – the element commander into position to observe the obstacle arrounding area. Speculative fire, if rized and appropriate, is employed on cted enemy positions			
d.		- the element commander performs a at estimate and makes a plan.			
		t bypasses or breaches the obstacle tact drills on encountering a natural or			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
artificial obs	stacle:				
a.	the ele	ement searches for existing bypass ons			
b.	anti-a	enemy is detected, it is engaged with rmour and indirect fire in an attempt troy it or force it to withdraw			
c.		enemy cannot be destroyed or forced hdraw, it is picketed			
d.	of the move bypas	rpass location is found, those portions element not in supporting positions to and secure the bypass. Once the s is secure, the element passes gh as quickly as possible, an continues ove			
e.		pass location cannot be found, the ent takes the following course of			
	(1)	if no enemy force has been detected, or has withdrawn, the element takes necessary action to secure the obstacle and moves through it in a manner which minimizes the risk to indirect fire or, if necessary, breaches the obstacle IAW Cbt Tm BTS 4303, 'Breach Obstacles,' or			
	(2)	if enemy forces have been detected, and cannot be destroyed or forced to withdraw, the element, unless otherwise ordered, breaches (if necessary) and attacks IAW BTS 4001, 'Attack' (Sect/Pl or Coy).			
7. The e	lement	passes the following information to			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
highe	er HQ:				
	a.	location of the obstacle(s)			
	b.	type(s) of obstacle(s).			
	c.	length / width of obstacle area			
	d.	enemy coverage of the obstacle, including enemy strength			
	e.	breaching requirements			
	f.	bypass route(s).			
8.	The e	element reacts to a suspected enemy position:			
	a.	carries out Warning, Security, Reconnaissance, and Plan procedures			
	b.	if the risk is unacceptable and time permits, the element secures the position			
	c.	if the risk is acceptable or the requirement for speed does not permit the element to secure the position:			
		(1) elements are designated to provide fire on the position if enemy forces are identified, or smoke is used to mask the position			
		(2) the element bypasses the position as quickly as possible and carries on with the mission.			
9.	The e	element moves through a built-up area:			
	a.	upon reaching a built-up area, the element moves into a column or staggered column			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	formation				
b.	if applicable, infantry may dismount and provides close-in security for the front, flanks and rear of the column				
c.	infantry reconnoitres and clears rooftops, buildings and obstacles along the route IAW the orders				
d.	alert friendly elements of any enemy armour or anti-tank weapons				
e.	if applicable, APCs provide fire support for dismounted infantry				
f.	trailing personnel maintain visual contact with the lead of the element and dismounted infantry				
g.	the element commander reports clearing of built-up area routes to higher HQ.				
and all releva	10. The element commander reports route progress and all relevant information (terrain, obstacles, PIR, etc) to higher HQ IAW the orders.				
11. The e	lement meets all prescribed timings.				

4309 C/D - OCCUPY ASSEMBLY AREA / HARBOUR / HIDE

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has been given the order to move and occupy an assembly area, harbour, or hide. The platoon / company is given a general area and allowed to select the exact location of the assembly area, harbour, or hide. Resupply and maintenance support are available. The enemy has the capability to perform section and platoon level probes supported by indirect fire and close air support (CAS). This platoon / company can be mounted or dismounted.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance party completes preparations and guides the platoon / company main body into their respective positions no later than the time specified in orders. OPSEC is maintained. The platoon / company completes preparation as detailed by the commander no later than the time specified.

Note: The following sub-tasks and standards do not necessarily apply to the same degree for assembly areas / harbours / hides. The degree of emphasis on security and concealment vice routine administration varies with the drill being executed (eg. hides require a higher degree of security and concealment than harbours, which are designed to allow routine maintenance and resupply).

	Sub-Tasks and Standards					
1. The co	ommander tentatively selects an assembly					
area / harbou	r / hide that provides:					
a.	concealment and space for dispersal					
b.	entry and exit routes					
c.	drainage and level areas					
d.	defence and security. Open areas around the					

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		assembly area allow security with minimum allocation of manpower.			
2.	The c	ommander issues orders that:			
	a.	designate tentative areas for each subordinate element			
	b.	designate a reconnaissance party, reconnaissance party instructions and reconnaissance party leader. The reconnaissance party includes personnel to select and mark routes, to guide the main body into positions and to secure the area			
	c.	specify an order of march			
	d.	provide for all-round defence			
	e.	designate priority of work and provides for maintenance and resupply			
	f.	has the occupation accomplished under conditions of limited visibility if possible.			
3. recon	-	olatoon / company constitutes a nice party:			
	a.	guides from each section / platoon link-up with the reconnaissance party commander			
	b.	the reconnaissance party may include vehicles and personnel from each section / platoon as the tactical situation permits.			
4.	Reco	nnaissance party prepares to move:			
	a.	the reconnaissance party commander issues a warning order			
	b.	all personnel are briefed on the plan and			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		their c	luties, including:			
		(1)	the proposed location of the platoon / company assembly area, harbour, or hide			
		(2)	the location of the contact point			
		(3)	the time of the main body's arrival at the start point (SP) and release point (rel P)			
		(4)	routes to the assembly area, harbour, or hide for both the reconnaissance party and main body			
		(5)	the order of march for the platoon / company			
		(6)	the proposed location of platoon / company HQ			
		(7)	NBC conditions and MOPP level			
		(8)	whether radio silence is or will be in effect			
		(9)	representatives and composition of reconnaissance party			
		(10)	any special instructions.			
5. T	he re	econna	issance party moves to the new area:			
a.		maint	ains security			
b.		reconi	noitres the route from SP to RP			
c.		monit requir	ors for NBC contamination, if ed			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	d.	marks obstacles and bypass routes.			
6. and pr		econnaissance party moves into the new area s it for the platoon / company's arrival:			
	a.	halts at the entrance and personnel dismount and do a sweep of the immediate area			
	b.	vehicles enter assembly area, harbour, or hide and establish a firm base, with drivers remaining to man radios and weapons			
	c.	for a dismounted platoon / company, the entry point is selected at the 6 o'clock position, the perimeter is marked, and track plan established			
	d.	party completes sweep of area while reconnaissance party commander conducts reconnaissance			
	e.	party RVs at firm base where reconnaissance party commander allocates section / platoon areas, taking into account type of assembly area, harbour, or hide defence (linear, internal or perimeter) and location of support arms, for example:			
		(1) anti-armour weapons cover main approaches			
		(2) air defence sentries cover air approaches with good fields of observation and fire			
		(3) FC / FOO are positioned to cover main approaches			
	f.	if radio silence is not in effect, the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	reconnaissance party commander moves to the area selected for the platoon / company HQ and establishes communication with higher HQ			
g.	if time and radio silence situation permit, the reconnaissance party commander establishes communication with the platoon / company commander and confirms the suitability of the area and the order of march			
h.	the reconnaissance party commander coordinates the local defence while section / platoon representatives draw sketches for their commanders and mark vehicle positions			
i.	OPs and NBC sentries are established to maintain security			
j.	for hides, rolling replenishment is conducted prior to occupation			
k.	guides move to designated RVs to meet the platoon / company.			
7. The parea, harbou	platoon / company occupies the assembly r, or hide:			
a.	sections / platoons are guided to their new locations			
b.	individual vehicles are placed in locations designated by section / platoon guides, and switch off independently			
c.	if dismounted, the platoon / company enters at the 6 o'clock position, with the HQ element moving through to occupy the			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	assem	e of the designated shape of the ably area, harbour, or hide shape e, triangle, 'Y')			
d.	their	nanders at all levels are briefed by reconnaissance party representatives the sketch of the area			
e.		ement designated to man the contact s does so immediately			
f.	areas	are secured			
g.	the co	ommander issues orders, which de:			
	(1)	priority of work			
	(2)	state of readiness			
	(3)	crash harbour RVs			
	(4)	routine			
	(5)	whether line will be laid			
	(6)	camouflage			
	(7)	stand to			
	(8)	radio silence			
	(9)	arcs of responsibility			
	(10)	track plan			
	(11)	resupply procedures			
	(12)	NBC state			
h.	sectio	on / platoon 2ICs brief commanders on			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		assem	ıbly area / harbour / hide layout			
	i.		on / company HQ sends a LOCSTATE her HQ			
	j.	the lo	on / platoon commanders reconnoitre cation of crash harbour RVs with dinates if possible / permitted.			
8. harbo		olatoon le drills	/ company carries out assembly area,			
	a.		s maximum use of available time to re for upcoming operations:			
		(1)	supplies and ammunition are replenished			
		(2)	vehicles and equipment are repaired / recovered			
		(3)	training is conducted			
		(4)	plans are prepared			
		(5)	troops are rested			
	b.	maint	ains security and concealment.			
9.	The c	commai	nder coordinates with adjacent units:			
	a.		ishes responsibility for overlapping of fire on enemy approaches			
	b.		es information on OP locations and ignals			
	c.	securi	ity and defence.			
10. harbo			defending the assembly area, further developed, depending on the			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
antic	ipated l	length of the occupation:			
	a.	enemy approaches are identified			
	b.	vehicles prepare primary, and alternate fighting positions as required			
	c.	protective obstacles are placed on likely enemy approaches			
	d.	local defence, NBC and air sentries are constantly maintained			
	e.	the use of indirect fire is planned			
	f.	enemy elements can not move to within visual range of any position without being detected.			
11.	On le	eaving the area, the platoon / company:			
	a.	recovers all mines and obstacles			
	b.	leaves nothing of intelligence or material value			
	c.	eliminates signs of the its presence in the area (trash, aiming posts, telephone wire)			
	d.	ensures vehicles do not line up on roads, but move directly from their positions at the designated timing.			

4310 C/D - CONDUCT A CONVOY ESCORT

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is tasked to conduct a convoy escort to accompany and protect a vehicle column. Civilian or military organizations may be involved. The route is provided. The escort commander is normally the convoy commander.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company escorts the convoy to its new location by the time specified in the orders, without losing any vehicles due to inadequate control or immediate reaction measures / drills.

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
IAW BTS 1	1. The escort commander completes battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure,' with special emphasis on the following:			
a.	specific mission			
b.	detailed map reconnaissance and reconnaissance plan			
c.	provision of liaison officer (LO) with civilian authorities			
d.	enemy / belligerent threat			
e.	RV and schedule			
f.	hides, rest halts			
g.	primary and alternate routes			
h.	small or large convoy			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	i.	confrontation lines along route			
	j.	inspection of the cargo			
	k.	national origin of the column			
	1.	column commander			
	m.	packet commanders' responsibilities			
	n.	action at halts, checkpoints, and drop off point			
	0.	counter-ambush / mine plan			
	p.	communications plan			
	q.	provision of first aid			
	r.	identification of the higher rapid reaction force.			
2. three	The e	escort commander organizes the convoy into ings:			
	a.	advance group - lead element provides security of the route to provide early warning where possible, and reconnoitres detours and establish pickets			
	b.	close protection group - provides immediate well-defended convoy protection. The escort commander is located within this group			
	c.	reserve group - provides a rearguard / reserve, medical and recovery resources.			
3. escor	The e	escort commander determines the method of red:			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
	a.	column grouping				
	b.	tunnel concept				
4.		escort commander briefs subordinate / personnel on convoy procedures:				
	a.	the route to include medical and maintenance support locations and the destination				
	b.	the prescribed average speed, maximum speed and distance between vehicles, packets				
	c.	accident and breakdown procedures				
	d.	blackout policy				
	e.	communications procedures				
	f.	air sentry requirements				
	g.	negotiation procedure				
	h.	immediate action drills IAW BTS 4308, 5004, and 5005, 'Move Tactically,' 'Defend Against Air Attack,' and 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire'				
	i.	conducts rehearsals.				
-	specified time. The escort commander verifies that all vehicles have crossed the start point and reports to higher					
6. locati		escort commander determines and reports the all halts.				

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
7.	The e	The escort conducts scheduled halts:				
	a.	halts at prescribed times to avoid possible conflict with other convoy schedules				
	b.	when possible, halts where visibility is at least 200 m to the front and rear of the column				
	c.	establishes a perimeter defence				
	d.	departs on schedule.				
	8. The convoy makes an unscheduled halt due to a vehicle accident, road block or some other unplanned event:					
	a.	all halts are reported to the escort commander, and reports the halt to higher HQ				
	b.	the escort takes immediate action IAW the threat				
	c.	the advance guard commander or LO negotiates confrontations				
	d.	during halts, the escort establishes a perimeter defence				
	e.	the escort resumes movement on the escort commander's order.				
9.	The c	convoy reacts to an ambush:				
	a.	ambushed elements immediately proceed through the ambush if at all possible				
	b.	the escort commander immediately decides to proceed through the ambush if at all				

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	possible			
c.	if proceeding through the ambush is not possible, the escort commander decides to halt and attempt to eliminate the enemy threat and extricate the ambushed elements			
d.	the escort force immediately reacts			
e.	suppressive fire is used to cover immediate deployment			
f.	that part of the convoy not caught in the ambush is halted and protected			
g.	that part of the convoy caught in the ambush is extricated			
h.	if applicable, all vehicles being escorted clear the road to permit the escort force to manoeuvre			
i.	once all vehicles are clear of the ambush, the commander issues orders for some or all vehicles to continue on the primary route, use an alternate route, return to the start point or proceed to another location, as applicable			
j.	no vehicles are lost due to inappropriate or improperly carried out ambush drills.			

4311 C/D - RELIEF IN PLACE

ELEMENT: PL/COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company is ordered to relieve another unit in place, or is relieved by another unit. Enemy action is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company performs a relief in place with minimal reduction in the ability to defend the position and without being detected. The platoon / company performs the relief no later than the time specified in the order.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	The c	commanders plan a relief in place:			
	a.	issues a warning order			
	b.	if the platoon / company is incoming, designates an advance party.			
2.	The p	platoon / company prepares for the relief:			
	a.	if the platoon / company is incoming, reconnaissance is conducted			
	b.	if the platoon / company is outgoing, nonessential equipment is thinned-out			
	c.	routes and positions are marked			
	d.	guides are positioned.			
3. and e		ncoming and outgoing commanders meet ge essential information:			
	a.	arrange a specific time and place for			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		coordination			
	b.	include participation by section and weapons detachment commanders, and attachment commanders			
	c.	exchange enemy information			
	d.	reconnaissance the area of the unit being relieved			
	e.	exchange CEOI information			
	f.	discuss the use of guides and liaison personnel			
	g.	check security and control measures			
	h.	review fire support plans			
	i.	review the barrier plan			
	j.	establish the sequence and method of relief			
	k.	establish a specific time for the transfer of responsibility			
	1.	exchange information on OPs and patrols			
	m.	coordinates the exchange of weapons and equipment, as ordered.			
4.	The i	ncoming commander finalizes the plan:			
	a.	develops a plan based on planning and coordinate with the unit to be relieved			
	b.	develops and issues an Op O.			
5.	The u	units execute the relief sequentially or			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
simu	simultaneously:				
	a.	both outgoing and incoming units operate on the outgoing unit's command net			
	b.	unit guides control movement			
	c.	handle emergencies on the incoming unit's net			
	d.	when the relief is complete, the incoming unit operates on its own net.			
6.	The ι	units conduct a sequential relief:			
	a.	the incoming unit moves to an assembly area to the rear of the outgoing unit			
	b.	CPs and echelons of the two units co-locate to facilitate the relief and transfer of equipment, ammunition, supplies, and obstacles			
	c.	the first incoming section / platoon moves to the position of the first outgoing section / platoon to be relieved			
	d.	each vehicle and dismounted position is relieved one at a time			
	e.	the outgoing vehicles and personnel move to an assembly area behind the position			
	f.	relief of subsequent sections / platoons begins once the first outgoing section / platoon reaches and clears its release point			
	g.	command passes after two or more sections / platoons of the incoming combat unit has completed relief - for a company relief in place, this includes the forward platoons -			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		or as ordered			
	h.	transfer of supplies and obstacles is completed (including the handover of CF 947 Protective Minefield(s) Record(s)).			
7.	The t	units conduct simultaneous relief:			
	a.	all incoming sections / platoons move along designated routes to the outgoing section / platoon positions			
	b.	all vehicles and dismounted personnel are relieved simultaneously and immediately move to an assembly area			
	c.	the transfer of supplies and obstacles, including the handover of Protective Minefield Record(s), is completed.			

4312 C/D - WITHDRAWAL

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The enemy may or may not be engaging the platoon with direct fire. The platoon / company is operating as part of a larger force and is given an order to conduct a withdrawal, or the enemy situation forces the unit from its position. Another element may be covering the withdrawal. The enemy is company(-) in size, and has close air support (CAS) and indirect fire support available.

TASK STANDARD:

Key timings are met (eg. rearward movement, position denial, thinning out and all troops clear of a line to the rear of the position). The platoon / company is not cut off from the larger force. The withdrawal is conducted so that detection is avoided, or occurs too late for the enemy to affect the withdrawal. All supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated are destroyed. All PWs and casualties are evacuated.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon / company commander completes			
battle procedure IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The platoon / company commander plans / prepares for withdrawal:			
a. develops the size, composition, tasks and commander of the reconnaissance party			
b. distributes specific tasks to sections			
c. 2ICs conduct reconnaissance			
d. coordinate direct / indirect fire to cover			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	diseng	gagement			
e.	plans conge	and prepares routes to reduce stion			
f.	organ	izes security forces to cover ment			
g.	plans eleme	/ coordinates with supporting nts			
h.	develo	ops deception activities			
i.		ops contingency plans in case the attacks during the withdrawal.			
or ma	kes the	/ company commander receives the decision to withdraw (if IAW the 's orders or intent) and issues orders:			
a.		atoon / company commander makes a estimate of the situation			
b.	deterr	nines and promulgates key timings:			
	(1)	the time to start thinning out			
	(2)	the time before which there will be no rearward movement except for normal traffic and reconnaissance parties			
	(3)	the time up to which the position must be denied to the enemy			
	(4)	the time by which the position is abandoned			
	(5)	the time by which all troops will be			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		clear of a line behind the position			
	c.	establishes a sequence of withdrawal			
	d.	coordinates with higher HQ			
	e.	coordinates for a rearward passage of lines when necessary			
	f.	plans occupation of the new position			
	g.	designates a rear guard force to be used when under extreme enemy pressure.			
4.	The p	platoon / company executes the withdrawal:			
	a.	indirect fire and obstacles are employed to slow the enemy and mask the movement of the elements			
	b.	if out of contact, the enemy does not detect the withdrawal, or detects it too late to affect the withdrawal			
	c.	if in contact, the least heavily engaged element withdraws first. Casualties and nonessential elements and equipment are evacuated with this element, if not already evacuated with the reconnaissance parties			
	d.	use fire and movement to establish clean break			
	e.	RVs and checkpoints are established			
	f.	all materials and equipment that must be left behind are destroyed or rendered inoperable.			
5.	Whe	n necessary, the platoon / company conducts			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a rearward passage of lines IAW BTS <u>4302</u> , 'Passage of Lines.'			
6. The platoon / company reports throughout the withdrawal, and when it is ready to continue the defence or execute the next task.			

4313 B/C - BREAK CONTACT

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is moving or stationary and the enemy engages. The commander orders the section / platoon to break contact. Note that this BTS could be read in combination with BTS 5005, 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.' Moreover, this BTS could be imbedded into BTS 4312, 'Withdrawal,' as the method used to conduct effective fire and movement to gain a clean break from the enemy.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon moves to where the enemy cannot observe, or place direct fire on it. The section / platoon continues follow-on operations.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section / platoon commander gives the order			
to break contact:			
a. directs one element / section in contact to establish a fire base and support the disengagement of the remainder of the section / platoon			
b. orders the movement of elements / sections to a recognizable terrain feature, or to the last RV to establish a subsequent fire base			
2. The fire base element / section continues to suppress the enemy:			
a. maintains effective direct fire against specified targets			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	uses indirect fire (if available) to suppress the enemy and mask movement			
	c.	obscures the enemy with smoke.			
3. disens	The n	noving elements / sections begin their ent:			
	a.	use fragmentation and smoke grenades to mask movement			
	b.	take up designated positions and engage the enemy.			
4. fireba	4. The section / platoon commander directs the firebase to move to its next location.				
	a.	uses the appropriate movement technique based on the volume and accuracy of the enemy fire			
	b.	takes up a designated position and engages the enemy.			
5. from	The s	ection / platoon continues to bound away			
	a.	continues to suppress the enemy			
	b.	continues to bound until it breaks contact, passes through a higher level, or reaches the assigned position for its next mission			
	c.	changes the direction of movement once contact is broken to reduce the ability of the enemy to place effective indirect fire on the unit			
	d.	moves to the last RV in the absence of a			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
commander's instructions.			
6. The section / platoon commander moves the section / platoon to the final RV:			
a. accounts for personnel and equipment			
b. reorganizes as required IAW BTS <u>4305</u> , 'Consolidate.'			
c. reports to the higher commander.			

4315 B - ESTABLISH A TRAFFIC CONTROL POST

ELEMENT: RECCE DET / SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITION

The reconnaissance det / section has been tasked to establish a traffic control post (TCP) as part of a movement control organization. In addition, the det / section may be responsible to reconnoitre the route and proposed Waiting / Halt areas. Enemy contact is possible or expected. Radio silence is in effect.

TASK STANDARD:

The reconnaissance det / section establishes the TCP within the timings directed in orders. The det / section operates the TCP effectively in all weather and visibility conditions, and helps to maintain a regular flow of traffic and prevent congestion on the route. The det / section assists the move of the passing units with no compromise of security, and maintains a log of the packets/serials/columns which have proceeded through the TCP. The det / section commander informs higher HQ of the progress of the move.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The det / section commander carries out battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The det / section commander conducts a reconnaissance of the TCP location, with emphasis on the following:			
a. routes in/out			
b. identify critical areas along route (bridge chokepoints, etc)	es,		
c. waiting areas			
d. concealed positions for det / section			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		vehicles			
	e.	alternate routes around the TCP			
	f.	suitable LZ.			
3.	The	det / section:			
	a.	conducts a reconnaissance of the route within sector to identify and mark, as ordered, alternate routes, detours, waiting and halt areas			
	b.	establishes and maintains communications with the higher HQ			
	c.	sites pointmen at all directions from which traffic may be expected. They must be properly equipped to include personal weapon, complete fighting order, NBC IPE, flashlight, traffic baton and movement schedule			
	d.	ensures columns / serials / packets follow the prescribed route and block timings			
	e.	identifies and logs each column / serial / packet as they pass the TCP			
	f.	prevents unauthorized military and civilian traffic from interfering with scheduled movement			
	g.	reports any refugees activity which may effect the move			
	h.	ensures that local security of the TCP and det / section vehicles is maintained at all times			
	i.	conducts a reconnaissance of detours and			

	IJΞ	NPrac	Ineff	
	directs traffic along detours if traffic on the main route becomes blocked			
j.	maintains close watch on the progress of the move and reports, as ordered, to the Sector HQ			
k.	helps to transmit and effect any changes in orders to the passing units			
1.	reports on the condition of the route.			

4316 D/F - CONDUCT ROAD MOVEMENT

ELEMENT: ADMIN COY / BN HQ

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The unit must move to a new location by road. It has received a move warning order and subsequent order. In the case where the unit will be participating in a brigade move, the unit will be responsible to plan and conduct its move to the brigade Start Point (SP) and from the brigade Release Point (rel P) to the new location. Movement control along the brigade route will be provided by the brigade. In the case of a unit move, the unit will be responsible to provide movement control along its route using integral and attached assets.

TASK STANDARD:

The movement plan is prepared IAW CFP 303(9) and unit SOPs, and is distributed in time to permit integral, attached and supporting units to adequately prepare for the move. Vehicles and personnel are prepared to conduct the move safely and within prescribed timings. The unit moves to the new location with minimal casualties from enemy action or accidents, meets all prescribed timings, does not disrupt the move of other units and, upon arrival in the new location, is ready to conduct subsequent tasks with minimal reorganization.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	e Procedure is carried out IAW BTS 1001, edure,' with emphasis on the following			
a.	ground and / or air reconnaissance of the primary and alternate routes is conducted, if possible			
b.	defiles, possible ambush sites, and bridge classifications are identified			
c.	enemy activity			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
d.	support requirements for traffic control, communications, escort, indirect fire, air defence, supply and decontamination are identified			
e.	packet / column composition and order of march are designed to permit the unit to meet timings, provide security in case of enemy contact and, upon arrival at the new location, to carry on with subsequent tasks with minimum reorganization.			
overlays, as distributed t	2. A move order, movement table(s), graphs, and overlays, as required, are prepared IAW CFP 303(9) and distributed to integral, attached and supporting units in time to allow adequate preparation for the move.			
3. A route card is prepared IAW CFP 303(9) and contains sufficient detail to permit personnel to complete the move without maps and to assist packet / column commanders to meet prescribed timings.				
4. The u	init completes preliminary preparations to id:			
a.	personnel are briefed on the move			
b.	route cards are prepared and distributed			
c.	vehicle and equipment maintenance checks are conducted			
d.	vehicles are loaded, loads are configured to meet height restrictions, and antennas are tied down			
e.	critical supplies and equipment are dispersed throughout the packets / columns in order to minimize critical losses			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
f.	Trail Party vehicles and personnel are designated			
g.	Rear Party vehicles and equipment, if applicable, are positioned in areas that provide cover and concealment, and do not impede departure of main body vehicles			
h.	personnel receive the maximum amount of rest possible. Rest is enforced if necessary			
i.	Advance or Staging Party vehicles and personnel are dispatched by times indicated in orders			
j.	the route to the brigade / unit SP is signed IAW unit SOPs.			
5. The move:	unit completes final preparations for the			
a.	the unit conforms to the degree of notice and related activities. Camouflage and security are maintained as late as possible			
b.	packet / column commanders inspect vehicles, trailers and personnel			
c.	vehicles are marshalled under cover, if possible			
d.	available LMGs, HMGs and hand held AT weapons are distributed within packets / columns to enhance security			
e.	arcs are assigned			
f.	air sentries are posted			
g.	IAW orders, radio nets are opened			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	h.	the ar	ea is swept to maintain OPSEC			
	i.	Trail	Party moves to and mans the unit SP			
6.	The u	ınit mo	ves to the new location:			
	a.	lead v	vehicle crosses SP at specified time			
	b.	packe SP	ts / columns do not bunch up or block			
	c.	the ur	nit maintains march discipline:			
		(1)	packets / columns and vehicles maintain the correct speeds, distances and proper positions			
		(2)	vehicles are operated effectively			
		(3)	personnel react quickly and appropriately to all signals and orders			
		(4)	traffic regulations, traffic control orders and rules of the road are observed			
		(5)	passive air and ground defence measures such as cover, concealment, camouflage, dispersion and use of blackout driving equipment and night vision equipment are employed			
		(6)	vehicles and equipment are serviced whenever necessary and possible			
		(7)	traffic control personnel are kept informed of the current situation regarding the move			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards					
d.		from the former unit location to the le / unit SP are removed				
e.	inform phase transm	accurate and timely SITREPs, NBC reports, information on passage of critical points, phase lines and other control measures are transmitted IAW orders and OPSEC measures				
f.		ts / columns take appropriate action at uled halts:				
	(1)	reach the halt area on time				
	(2)	all vehicles clear the route				
	(3)	vehicles are dispersed under cover, and camouflaged IAW unit SOPs				
	(4)	local security is established				
	(5)	halt parades and necessary maintenance are conducted				
	(6)	resupply and feeding are conducted with a sense of urgency				
	(7)	the packet departs the halt area on time				
g.		ts / columns take appropriate action at eduled halts:				
	(1)	all vehicles clear the route, if possible				
	(2)	local security is established				
	(3)	the cause of the halt is determined				
	(4)	the unscheduled halt is reported to				

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		the move control organization and the following packets / columns			
	(5)	the cause of the halt is eliminated, if possible			
	(6)	the packets / columns continue the move when directed by the move control organization or as soon as possible			
h.		ts / columns take appropriate action vehicles become disabled:			
	(1)	if possible, disabled vehicles are moved off the road so that they do not block traffic			
	(2)	the disabled vehicle(s) displays the appropriate visual indicator and deploys safety equipment (eg. triangles, flares) as required			
	(3)	IAW orders or unit SOPs, the remainder of the packet / column continues with the road move			
	(4)	the vehicle crew directs traffic around the disabled vehicle(s)			
	(5)	local security and radio watch are established			
	(6)	the status of the disabled vehicle(s) is reported			
	(7)	repairs are conducted by the crew or Trail Party and the vehicle(s) joins the Trail Party			
i.	the pa	acket / column reacts to air attack or			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
ambush IAW BTS <u>5004</u> , 'Defend Ag Air Attack,' or BTS <u>5006</u> , 'React to Ambush'	gainst		
j. packets / columns cross the rel P on t and proceed to the new location with halting or blocking the rel P			
7. Report status in new location.			

4321 C - SUPPORT AN ASSAULT BOAT CROSSING

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to support a company size manoeuvre element during the assault stage of a hasty or deliberate river crossing operation. Orders include the crossing site location, manoeuvre element to be crossed, H-hour, whether the crossing is to be silent or noisy, number of boats/motors assigned, and the location from which boats/motors can be drawn. A gap crossing site reconnaissance has been completed and the reconnaissance report (eg. DND 2106 or E122B GAPRECCEREP) is available. Elements of the force-in-place provide local security. No iterations of training on this task are required under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The crossing subunit is briefed and safely transported across the water obstacle at the designated site. The crossing commences (eg. crosses line of departure (LD) along near shoreline) at H-hour. Strict noise and light discipline is observed at all times.

Note: Peacetime training safety measures are observed IAW B-GL-304-003/TS-0A1, Training Safety while training near, on or in water.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. If time permits and the platoon did not conduct the original gap crossing reconnaissance, a platoon reconnaissance party conducts a confirmatory reconnaissance to confirm the crossing site location and key locations at the site (eg. debussing point, boat off loading point (BOLP), boat inflation point (BIP), check point, attack position, LD).			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
3.	The platoon commander's orders include:			
а	assignment of key personnel / sections to activities at the debussing point, BOLP, BIP, check point and attack position			
t	assignment of crews to boats, as appropriate for a silent or noisy crossing			
c	c. crossing subunit's strength, identification, and arrival time			
c	l. H-hour			
e	e. 'action on' procedures, including what action is to be taken following off loading of the crossing subunit on the far shore.			
of boats designa	Platoon representatives draw the required number s / motors and quantity of fuel at the location ated in orders, inspect / test the equipment, and s any deficiencies.			
platoon	For a deliberate crossing when time permits, the conducts rehearsals with the crossing subunit at a location in the rear.			
6. C	On arrival at the site, the platoon establishes a rbour.			
	The platoon lays out the site IAW the aissance report or confirmatory reconnaissance.			
	Platoon personnel are briefed on site layout, boat nd exit locations and markings, etc.			
debussi loads to	Platoon RV's with the crossing subunit at the ing point. Commanders coordinate assignment of boats, boat entry and exit locations and gs, etc. Crossing subunit personnel are briefed on			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
water safety measures, embarkation and debarkation drills, paddling, etc.			
10. Boats, motors, etc are received and unloaded at the BOLP.			
11. If not already inflated prior to arrival at the site, boats are moved to the BIP and inflated. The risk of giving away the crossing site location is weighed against speed when deciding to use manual inflation means versus compressors.			
12. Boats, with assigned crews and crossing subunit personnel, are moved from the BIP, through the checkpoint, to the attack position and cross the LD at H-hour.			
13. Pioneers return boats to the near shoreline to pick up additional waves of crossing subunit personnel, as required.			
14. Ensure strict noise and light discipline is adhered to at all times.			
15. The platoon submits periodic task status reports IAW unit SOPs.			
16. Upon completion of the assault boat crossing, the platoon collapses, repairs (eg. patches boats), repack and returns the boats / motors.			

4322 C - BREACH MINEFIELD MANUALLY

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

A platoon receives orders to execute a manual breach of a minefield as part of a deliberate breaching operation. Orders include information acquired during the reconnaissance, the start and end points of the breach lane, the width of lane to be achieved (1 metre if dismounted; minimum of 5 metres if mounted) and the time by which the breach is to be achieved. The breach is executed under conditions of low visibility and the minefield is no more that 350 metres in depth (eg. 8 hours of manual breaching). No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The breach is completed and ready for firing by the time stated in orders. The platoon takes all reasonable precautions to prevent detection by the enemy.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. Orders include the assignment of personnel to the Setting Out, Breaching, Explosive Charge and Lane Marking Parties.			
3. The IC Breaching Team controls the breaching operation:			
a. coordinates and controls all parties working in and moving to / from the lane breach			
b. ensures that work parties move only in cleared areas, work in echelon and maintain			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		the m	inimum safety distance of 20m			
	c.	partie	inates the activities of any working s detailed for work other than hing in the lane			
	d.		personnel to duties in later phases they have finished their initial tasks			
	e.		its task status reports to higher quarters IAW unit SOPs.			
4. lane:	The S	Setting	Out Party breaches the setting out			
	a.		searches a 5m long and 1m wide base erpendicular to the safe lane:			
		(1)	marks both sides of the base line with mine tape			
		(2)	checks for trip wires using the trip wire feeler drill, looks / feels for mines and prods for buried mines along the baseline using the prodder drill			
		(3)	marks and bypasses all anti-tank (AT) mines and neutralizes and marks all anti-personnel (APers) mines. Personnel not involved in neutralizing an APers mine cease work and adopt a prone position when an APers mine is being neutralized			
		(4)	upon finding a trip wire, the No 1 searches to both ends of the wire, neutralizes / marks any mechanisms, cuts the wire and ensures the ends of			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	the wire are clear of the lane before continuing the search of the path			
not to be em sufficient me exists for the	ed is essential and the enemy is either known uploying APers mines, or mines have etallic content to ensure detection, the option e No 1 to search for buried mines using the or drill instead of the prodder drill.			
b.	starting on the right hand side of the baseline, the No 1 searches a 1m metre wide path through the minefield in the same manner that the base line was searched. No 1 lays out tapes on both the right and left side of the path			
c.	IC maintains 1m spacing from No 1, pins down tapes laid by No 1, and ensures that No 1 maintains the correct bearing			
d.	No 2 maintains 5m spacing from IC and locates any deep buried mines. When found, No 2 withdraws to allow IC to uncover, neutralize (if an APers mine) and marks the mine			
e.	Setting Out Party lays out cross tapes across the 1 m path at 50m intervals to facilitate IC Breaching Team's control of the operation			
f.	after fixing the finishing tape, the IC Setting Out Party reports to the IC Breaching Team and moves his party a minimum of 20m to the left / right of the lane to a pre-identified RV.			
	ching Parties work in echelon, maintaining a g between parties:			
a.	the two No 1s search a 2m wide path to the			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		f the Setting Out Party's path or ding Breaching Party's path, as cable:			
	(1)	No 1s search side by side, each searching 1m of the 2m wide path			
	(2)	starting from the centre of the path and working outwards, the No 1s look / feel for mines and prod for buried mines using the prodder drill			
not to be em sufficient me exists for the	ployin etallic e No 1s	sential and the enemy is either known g APers mines or mines have content to ensure detection, the option s to search for buried mines using the instead of the prodder drill.			
	(3)	No 1s neutralize (APers mines only), mark and bypass mines. Personnel not involved in neutralizing an APers mine cease work and adopt a prone position when an APers mine is being neutralized			
b.	path be the pre trip we deals	works 5m ahead of the No 1s on the breached by the Setting Out Party or receding Breaching Party, feeling for rires across the 2m wide path. No 3 with any trip wires using the trip wire on drill			
c.	their to market uncov	llows 1 m behind No 1s, pinning down tapes and providing them with mine ers. Time permitting, IC may prod, ver, neutralize (APers mines) and mark d mines identified by the No 1s			
d.		yo No 3s follow 5m behind the IC. g the mine detector drill, they search			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	for buried mines missed by the No 1s and uncover and mark all buried mines, leaving the mines for explosive disposal			
e.	when the party reaches a control tape or the finishing tape, the IC Breaching Party reports to the IC Breaching Team. If at the finishing tape, the party joins the Setting Out Party.			
	osive Charge Party prepares mines for working from the near side to the far side of d:			
a.	once the rearmost Breaching Party has completed its search of a 50m section of the lane, the IC Explosive Charge Party and three charge placers move into that section and place a basic charge on or beside (as applicable to the mine) each mine, leaving the mine markers in place			
b.	when charge placers have finished a section plus 20m, the remaining personnel in the party lay out a trunk line from the near to far side, attaching the charges to the trunk line and picking up mine markers as they advance			
c.	when all charges are connected along the entire length of the breach, the IC follows his party out of the lane to the RV and reports to the IC Breaching Team.			
the trunk lin	C Breaching Team orders the connection of e to an initiation set / blasting machine and rges on order of the overall tactical			
8. The I	Lane Marking Party completes initial			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
marking of the lane to include, as a minimum, the entrance funnel, left hand lane markers and right hand lane entrance and exit markers. 9. For a 1m wide lane to support a dismounted attack, a Setting Out Party searches the 1m wide path, and a three man Explosive Charge Party places charges on mines and lays out the ring main. The IC Explosive			
Charge Party also acts as the IC Breaching Team.			

4323 C - CONTRUCT AN ELEVATED CABLE SYSTEM

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct an elevated cable system to move a number of loads across a wet gap. Orders include the time by which the system must be operational. A reconnaissance has been previously conducted and the reconnaissance report and design proforma are available. The system consists of a sheer at one end and a gyn at the other. The necessary stores and equipment are available. Loads are not to exceed 100 kg. The gap to be crossed is no larger than 50m. Site conditions are good. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The elevated cable system is constructed IAW with the reconnaissance and design proforma provided, and within the time allotted.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The required materials are ordered and a suitable rendezvous established.			
3. A platoon representative marries up with the resources element providing the rigging stores and equipment at the rendezvous, inspects the stores and equipment, and addresses any deficiencies.			
4. The platoon establishes and coordinates task site security IAW BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations Security.'			
5. The site commander prepares the site for construction as necessary (eg. marks out locations for anchorage, gyn and sheer, stores area, etc).			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	site commander supervises the construction ted cable system IAW the design provided, it:			
a.	safety precautions are observed throughout, including water safety			
b.	concurrent activity is maintained throughout			
c.	proper knots and lashings are employed throughout			
d.	anchorages are properly installed			
e.	gyn and sheer are properly constructed and erected			
f.	block and tackle systems are properly constructed			
g.	main cable is properly rigged and tensioned.			
	platoon crosses the load(s), ensuring positive aintained throughout using the load hauling			
	platoon commander submits task status gher HQ IAW unit SOPs.			

4324 C - CONSTRUCT A COMBAT ROAD

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct a combat road. Orders include the start and end points, lane requirements, the traffic density (vehicle types and frequency), and the time by which construction must be complete. Manpower, integral platoon equipment (eg. APC Dozer, chain saw) and construction material/expedient surfacing, as required, are available. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon constructs the combat road, providing unimpeded passage of the traffic for which it was designed, no later than the time specified in orders. The platoon maintains the road until traffic has ceased.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The reconnaissance party plans and conducts a reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance':			
a. to best ability, determines trafficability of existing terrain			
b. determines the most economical road alignment			
c. acquires information on improvements required including minor dozer blade and chain saw work, expedient surfacing requirements and culvert construction.			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
3.	The p	platoon commander plans the construction:			
	a.	determines construction scope of work based on reconnaissance information			
	b.	coordinates support external to the platoon (eg. expedient surfacing and / or construction materials).			
4. secur		platoon commander establishes task site W BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations Security.'			
5.	The p	platoon constructs a combat road:			
	a.	establishes the start and finish points as specified in orders. Follows the general alignment determined during the reconnaissance			
	b.	clears the road of any obstacles which will impede vehicular movement			
	c.	constructs the specified number of lanes, normally one lane as wide as the widest vehicle using the road plus 1m			
	d.	no route grade exceeds the capability of the expected vehicles. Makes minor route centreline changes to correct excessive grades			
	e.	installs expedient surfacing, such as corduroy surfacing, IAW the orders issued or the surface situation.			
6.	The p	platoon constructs / sets culverts:			
	a.	the platoon prepares the culvert site for construction:			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(1)	positions the culvert(s) IAW the drainage design (eg. angle of culvert in relation to road, exact location, etc)			
	(2)	ensures the culvert inlet elevation is at or below the bottom of the existing natural drainage channel or ditch			
	(3)	ensures that the culvert slope is at the same slope as the stream bed			
b.	the pl	atoon prepares the culvert trench:			
	(1)	ensures the culvert trench has the proper slope and is deep enough for the bed, culvert, and cover			
	(2)	ensures the cover is one-half the diameter of the culvert or 0.3m, whichever is larger			
	(3)	ensures the trench width provides for the culvert diameter, side spacing, and if multiple pipes are installed, inter-culvert spacing. Side and inter- culvert spacing is a minimum of one half of the culvert diameter			
	(4)	installs shoring prior to emplacing the culvert if the trench is deeper than the shoulder height of the soldiers in it, and the sides are not cut back to their natural angle of repose			
c.	the pl	atoon installs the culvert:			
	(1)	ensures ditch has no standing or			

	begins (2) ensures culvert bed, made of granular fill, is placed (3) the platoon constructs and sets culverts IAW manufacturer's or technical specifications (4) the outfall of culverts extends 0.6m beyond road embankments d. the platoon constructs culvert headwalls, wingwalls and endwalls and silt traps IAW drainage design.				NPrac	Ineff
			running water in it when installation begins			
		(2)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
		(3)	culverts IAW manufacturer's or			
		(4)				
	d.	wingv	walls and endwalls and silt traps IAW			
7. traffic						
	J J 1					
	b.	inspe	cts and repairs expedient surfacing			
	c.	maint	ains adequate drainage.			
8. repor			commander submits task status Q IAW unit SOPs.			

4325 C - CONSTRUCT A SNOW/ICE ROAD AND / OR AN ICE BRIDGE

ELEMENT: PNR PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct and maintain a snow/ice road and / or an ice bridge. Orders include the type and amount of traffic expected, the length of time that the road and / or bridge is to remain open, and the time by which construction must be complete. No iterations of training of this task are required under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon constructs the road and / or bridge within the time allotted and maintains the structure to meet the required specifications. Traffic interruptions are not caused by deficiencies in either construction or maintenance.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure			
IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The reconnaissance party commander plans and conducts a reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance':			
a. plans the reconnaissance:			
(1) for ice construction, determines the minimum ice thickness required for the traffic to be supported (weight of vehicles)			
(2) determines the geometric standards for the road to be constructed			
b. conducts the reconnaissance and designs			

Sul	o-Tasks	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
the st	ructure	:			
(1)	sites r	runway or road alignment			
(2)	for ice	e construction:			
	(a)	measures the ice thickness at intervals of 200m along the alignment by boring a hole through the ice, and locating the under-side of the ice with a stick with a transversely projecting nail			
	(b)	determines the minimum 'effective ice thickness' of the existing ice. Uses only the upper ice layer to determine 'effective ice thickness' if water is present between two ice layers			
	(c)	determines the minimum ice thickness required to support the anticipated traffic			
	(d)	determines the effort required (eg. snow removal, flooding, or reinforcement) to achieve the required 'effective ice thickness'			
	(e)	for ice roads, determines effort required to construct smooth approaches from the shore to the ice surface to allow traffic to move onto the ice with a minimum of impact			
	(f)	for ice bridges, determines the			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff			
		gap width, the type of bridge to be constructed, mooring/breast line and anchorage requirements, and sawing effort required.						
3. secur		platoon commander establishes task site W BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations Security.'						
4.	4. The platoon constructs a snow road:							
	a.	agitates the snow using harrows or drags with short scarifier blades or points until a light roller can be supported						
	b.	compacts the snow using towed drum rollers, either smooth or ribbed (eg. culverts filled to increase the weight), making several passes over an area						
	c.	allows a 'setting up period' to permit bonding by the snow particles						
	d.	repeats steps a through c allowing a 'setting up period' each time and increasing the weight of the roller if possible (three treatments, at intervals of four hours, give the same result as ten successive processing's without a time interval).						
OR								
5.	The p	platoon constructs an ice road:						
	a.	increases the ice thickness to achieve the 'effective ice thickness' required to support the intended traffic using one of the following methods:						
		(1) removes any snow and allows the ice						

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
			to thicken naturally over time			
		(2)	constructs snow dikes spaced 2.5 times the road width apart and pumps water onto the ice surface between the dikes, allowing the water to freeze in 25mm layers (about 2 hours at –15°C). Repeats the process until the required thickness is achieved. The carrying capacity of this induced ice is only one-half that of natural ice			
		(3)	reinforces the ice by flooding successive layers of snow (eg. three layers of snow-crete), straw (in single or three layers) or wire matting, brush, timbers/planks, etc until the required thickness is achieved			
	b.	constructs smooth approaches from the shore to the ice surface to allow traffic to move onto the ice with a minimum of impact.				
OR						
6.	The p	olatoon	constructs an ice bridge:			
	a.	the sh lines a breast	ridge section is properly anchored to hore by means of mooring / breast and holdfast anchorage. Mooring / t lines are properly secured to the e section			
	b.	cut (6 sides	ked ice bridges, the required depth of to 8m) is made into the banks on both of the open channel to fix the bridge in in place (eg. prevent it from being			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		swept away by the current)			
	c.	skewed ice bridges are constructed when the ice is thin and crumbles under the impact of the floating section or when erosion of the ice by the water current is a problem.			
7.	The p	platoon maintains a snow road:			
	a.	after a fresh snowfall, the surface is not plowed but is rolled to compact the new snow. Rolling begins as soon as 75mm of snow has fallen and continues throughout the snowfall			
	b.	continually builds up the surface until it is higher than the surrounding area to alleviate any drifting problem caused by the creation of a 'trough' type surface during compaction. Erects snow fences to prevent drifting if the surface cannot be built up.			
OR					
8.	The p	platoon maintains an ice road:			
	a.	ice thickness is checked twice a week at temperatures between -12°C and -4°C, and daily at temperatures above -4°C. New holes must be drilled for each measurement. The ice thickness is measured at intervals of 200 metres along the alignment, and at any locations where ice conditions change			
	b.	Cracks:			
		(1) under all conditions, the ice is watched closely and inspected at least once a day. If progressive			

	Sub	-Tasks a	and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		operation reduced is evide	g occurs the number of ons per day or the loads are d. If no progressive cracking ent, the number of operations is may be increased			
	(2)		which appear in the ice, if still ered usable, are repaired by:			
		r t t	Bridging. Rigid bridging members can be used to bridge the gap, if frozen in place. To avoid breaking off the loaded edges of the bracks, up to two times the minimum ice thickness is required			
		1	Flooding. 'Dry' cracks (eg. not extending to the water) can be filled with a water and snow mixture. Holes can be drilled to water level, and water pumped over cracks. (Holes must not be drilled within 5m of banks of cleared snow, as the ice surface in this area is usually deflected below free water level)			
	(3)	perpend	tion cracks which appear dicular to the road axis are d by flooding or bridging			
	(4)		as occur parallel to the y, the road is relocated at			
c.	snow	removal	is conducted to reduce			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	moving resistance and to prevent thawing action caused by insulating effect of snow			
d.	slush is removed by flooding and freezing			
e.	if operations have to proceed under average air temperatures higher than 0°C on fresh water ice, and higher than –2°C on sea ice, the required ice thickness is gradually increased by up to 20% more (or loads are reduced by 1/3) until deterioration of surface conditions (slush or candling) prevent further operations. Operations are suspended if maximum air temperature exceeds 4°C			
f.	during and for 3-5 days (depending on the ice thickness) after a rapid temperature drop, the minimum ice thickness is based on the average air temperature before the temperature drop. If the average daily temperature drops 4°C per day, the minimum ice thickness during the above period is increased by 40%, or loads are reduced by 1/2, and if the average daily temperature drops 8°C per day the minimum ice thickness is doubled, or the load is reduced by 3/4. It the total temperature drops more rapidly than 8°C per day, causing severe thermal stressing or cracking of the ice, temporary load restrictions are imposed			
g.	the following precautions are observed to prevent resonance in the ice sheet:			
	(1) over shallow water (eg. depth less than 50 times ice thickness) speeds			

Sub-Tasks and Standards					NPrac	Ineff
			are restricted to between 13 and 40 kph			
		(2)	over deep water (depth greater than 50 times ice thickness) speeds are restricted to less than 16 kph			
		(3)	movement (eg driving or taxiing) parallel to a shoreline at a distance of one load influence radius is avoided. Movement is permitted further away than 2 influence radii, nearer than 1/2 influence radius, or at an angle of 45° or more to the shore			
	h.	the maint	inimum distance between loads is ained.			
OR						
9.	The p	latoon	maintains an ice bridge:			
	a.		ors the erosion of the underside of the idge over time			
	b.	monit ancho	ors the condition of moorings and orage			
	c.	replac	ees the bridge section ice as required.			
10. repor			commander submits task status Q IAW unit SOPs.			

4326 B/C - CONTRUCT A HELICOPTER LANDING SITE

ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon receives orders to construct a helicopter landing site. Orders include the general location of the site, type and number of helicopters that will use the site, size and shape of the landing points within the site, usage (day/night and duration), site marking requirements, and time by which construction must be completed. Heavy equipment and dust control materials are available. No iterations of training on this task are performed under MOPP 3 Mask.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon constructs the helicopter landing site to the required specifications within the time allotted.

Sub-Tasks and Star	ndards \(\tag{\tau}{\tau}	NPrac	2007 777	Ineff
1. The section / platoon comma procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle I				
2. The reconnaissance party conconducts the reconnaissance IAW Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance	BTS <u>3011</u> , 'Conduct			
a. plans the reconnaissan	ce:			
size based on the points required, and the centre to	minimum landing site ne number of landing their shape and size, to centre separation and between landing			
	uirement for further nding points based on ation			

	Suk	o-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(3)	performs a map study to identify possible landing sites in the area of the general location provided in orders			
	(4)	marries up with a representative of the aviation unit accompanying the reconnaissance party, if available			
b.		ucts a reconnaissance of potential ng sites to determine the following:			
	(1)	availability of ground access routes to/from the site, including any improvement requirements			
	(2)	site suitability based on ground slope for day or night use			
	(3)	site layout			
	(4)	work required to clear obstructions from the approach and exit paths, oriented into the wind, for day or night use			
	(5)	work required at each landing point to clear the 'cleared to ground level' area and to clear the outer ring area of obstacles over 0.6 metres high			
	(6)	work required to provide the required 'hard surface' area at the centre of each landing point (eg. expedient surfacing, dust control)			
	(7)	camouflage requirements.			
		/ platoon seeks authority, via the chain supported aviation unit, to waive any			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
landing site preparation requirements which cannot be met.					
4. coord Opera					
5. The section / platoon constructs the selected landing site:					
	a.	lays out the landing site to include the boundaries of the landing site, the orientation and width of the helicopter approach / exit path, and any support areas			
	b.	clears obstructions from the helicopter approach / exit path to the required height			
	c.	clears the inner circle area to ground level, and obstacles over 0.6m high from outer ring at each landing point			
	d.	prepares the 'hard surface' area at the centre of each landing point			
	e.	constructs camouflage			
	f.	marks the landing site			
	g.	executes any required improvements to ground access routes.			
6. status		ection / platoon commander submits task s to higher headquarters IAW unit SOPs.			

I4371 B - CONSTRUCTS IMPROVISED WATER CROSSING DEVICES

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section, to include personnel, personal kit and vehicle, is required to cross a slow moving body of water without the assistance of boats or bridging assets. The vehicle to be crossed is ILTIS or LSVW. Sufficient materials are available to construct a gasoline drum raft or float. No enemy interference is expected. No iterations of this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section successfully crosses its personnel, kit and vehicle without any losses. Construction of the improvised vehicle-crossing device does not exceed five hours.

Note: Peacetime training safety measures are observed IAW B-GL-304-003/TS-0A1, Training Safety, while training near, on, or in water.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. Orders include what devices are to be constructed and a clear assignment of construction tasks to section personnel.			
3. Improvised crossing devices are constructed IAW the technical standard applicable to the selected device and all lashings are secure.			

PROTECTION

5001 D - CROSS A CONTAMINATED AREA

ELEMENT: COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon has been directed to cross a contaminated area to continue its mission. The higher HQ has provided the time by which the contaminated area must be crossed and, in the case of nuclear contamination, the maximum exposure dose. For chemical contamination, the type of agent is not known. Bypassing the contaminated area is not possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon crosses the contaminated area, without losses of personnel or equipment due to contamination, in the time specified and does not exceed the maximum exposure dose. The higher HQ receives the appropriate NBC report from the section / platoon.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards					
	If directed to cross a radiologically contaminated					
area, the sec	tion / platoon prepares for movement:					
a.	takes actions to provide extra shielding (such as using wet sandbags on floor)					
b.	stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with protective material kits, tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials					
c.	checks RADIAC instruments					
d.	assumes MOPP 3 Mask					
e.	closes and secures vehicle hatches / access					

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		points			
	f.	activates NBC over-pressurization systems.			
		ected to cross a chemically or biologically d area, a section / platoon prepares for			
	a.	stows externally carried equipment inside vehicles or covers it with protective material kits, tarps, plastic sheeting, or similar materials			
	b.	assumes MOPP 3 Mask			
	c.	attaches chemical detector paper to personnel and vehicles to provide warning of chemical contamination			
	d.	closes and secures vehicle hatches / access points			
	e.	activates NBC over-pressurization systems.			
3.	Section	on / platoon crosses the contaminated area:			
	a.	conducts movement along route designated by commander			
	b.	uses waypoints to assist in navigation			
	c.	avoids stirring up dust, if possible			
	d.	increases interval and lateral dispersion between vehicles, if terrain permits			
	e.	if applicable, monitors RADIAC instruments for radiation exposure and reports OEG information to the commander IAW SOP			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	f.	if applicable, monitors CAM, and three- way detection paper			
	g.	ensure main armament muzzle cover is in place			
	h.	observe animals and foliage.			
4.	Section	on / platoon exits the contaminated area:			
	a.	if identifiable, report on the exit to the commander			
	b.	submits NBC-4 report containing radiation and / or chemical / biological data			
	c.	if NBC monitoring readings are negative, requests permission from commander to initiate unmasking procedures, or initiates unmasking IAW orders or unit SOP			
	d.	zeros radiacmeters, if applicable			
	e.	conducts coordination for operational decontamination with commander			
	f.	continues the mission.			

5002 B/C/D - DECONTAMINATE

ELEMENT: SECT / PL/COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon has been contaminated by a nuclear, chemical, or biological source and is directed to conduct decontamination. Decontaminants, equipment, and new IPE are available.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon completes operational and thorough (coy level) decontamination. The section / platoon decontaminates without sustaining additional casualties to personnel or equipment, and without spreading contamination.

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
1. Perso Drill (ID Dr					
	2. Section / platoons conduct chemical / biological operational decontamination:				
a.	soldiers decontaminate personal weapons, paying particular attention to plastic handguards and stocks				
b.	soldiers avoid sharp objects that could cause rips or tears in garments.				
	Section / platoons conduct radiological econtamination:				
a.	exposed soldiers brush off any dry contaminants from their IPE, mask carrier, clothing, and gear				
b.	soldiers avoid spreading contamination into				

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	clean	areas.			
	4. Conducts operator decontamination as directed by section / platoon commanders:				
a.		section / platoons conduct chemical / biological decontamination:			
	(1)	operational decontamination begins within 15 minutes after personal decontamination is completed using the three or 20 litre decontamination apparatus			
	(2)	section / platoons scrub decontaminant onto contaminated surfaces and leave it in place at least 30 minutes before removal			
	(3)	section / platoons decontaminate only the surfaces section / platoon must touch while operating their equipment			
b.		Section / platoons conduct radiological decontamination:			
	(1)	section / platoons use available items (brooms, branches) to remove contamination			
	(2)	water is effective for removing contamination, but runoff must be strictly controlled. Use ditches to contain runoff			
	(3)	section / platoons remove gross contamination such as mud, dirt, or dust from vehicles using available			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff				
		items (sticks, shovels, brooms)					
		(4) section / platoons mark the contaminated area.					
5. plans		on / platoon commander coordinates and brough decontamination:					
	a. requests decontamination support through the higher commander						
	b.						
	c.	verifies arrival time at decontamination site					
	d. coordinates with the higher commander for relief from current mission						
	e.	issues movement order and decontamination instructions to the section / platoon IAW orders or unit SOP.					
	6. Section / platoon conducts tactical movement to decontamination site and prepares for thorough decontamination:						
	a.	moves to the marshalling area (taking required precautions if route is contaminated)					
	b.	assumes assigned position within the higher unit perimeter defence					
	c.	establishes and maintains local security IAW SOP or higher commander's direction					
	d.	prepares vehicles for decontamination:					
		(1) secures all external equipment					

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(2)	covers the main armament muzzle			
	(3)	removes vegetation used as camouflage			
	(4)	removes large amounts of mud (if necessary)			
	(5)	closes all vehicle hatches			
e.		on / platoon performs vehicle atamination:			
	(1)	ensures vehicle hatches are closed and secured			
	(2)	follows guidance of site OIC / NCOIC or decontamination section / platoon in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site			
	(3)	assists decontamination section / platoon in decontaminating vehicles as required			
	(4)	when decontamination is completed, moves vehicles to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by OIC / NCOIC			
f.	comp NBC	After vehicle decontamination is lete, section / platoons move to the equipment exchange site and repeat rocess outlined below.			
7. Under supervision of section / platoon commanders, site OIC / NCOIC, or decontamination team, section / platoon conduct NBC protective clothing exchange. (Note: section / platoon complete the					

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
following st				
a.	decontaminate and drop gear (weapon, helmet, webbing, mask carrier and personal items			
b.	decontaminate hood and gloves and roll up hood			
c.	remove NBC suit/overshoes			
d.	remove NBC gloves.			
then the sole unmask. If	rsonnel decontamination includes shower dier proceeds into a clear area where he can the decontamination does not include a soldier remains masked and carries on with ag:			
a.	put on clean NBC suit (Note: clean soldier pulls clean NBC suit from bag without touching the outside of the bag)			
b.	put on clean overboots / gloves (Note: clean soldier pulls clean overboots from bag without touching the outside of the bag, puts on overboots, and repeats the process for gloves)			
c.	secure hood			
d.	secure gear			
e.	Note: soldiers reverse buddy roles and repeat NBC protective clothing exchange process.			
	on / platoon commander reports ation status to higher HQ.			

BTS 5003B - CONDUCT NBC SURVEY

ELEMENT: SURVEY TEAM

ITERATION 1 2 3 4 5 (circle)

CONDITIONS

IAW orders or based on the tactical situation, the team leader will conduct a NBC Survey. The company has the ability to establish at least one NBC survey team. NBC survey equipment is available and operational. The company may be ordered to conduct an NBC survey of its immediate vicinity, a proposed new location or a limited route or area.

TASK STANDARD

The company's NBC survey team(s) determine contaminated areas, sign them, mark safe routes and correctly identify NBC agents. The squadron submits accurate and timely NBC reports IAW SOPs.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The NB plan an NBC	C survey team leaders and the NBC NCO survey:			
	determine areas of priority and approximate distance between checks			
]	for radioactive contamination, consider previous exposure of survey teams when establishing the turn back dose and dose rate.			
2. NBC su	rvey teams are briefed on:			
a.	tactical / enemy situation			
	specific areas of interest on which to concentrate			
	specific recording and reporting requirements			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	d.	for radioactive contamination, turn-back dose and dose rate and actions to take if reached			
	e.	marking requirements.			
3.	NBC st	urvey teams conduct survey:			
	a.	each team prepares vehicles and equipment			
	b.	contamination is checked for, recorded and reported IAW SOPs			
	c.	contaminated areas are marked			
	d.	for radioactive contamination, the turn back dose and / or dose rate are not exceeded without higher authority.			
4. req	NBC su uired IAV				

5004 B/C - DEFEND AGAINST AIR ATTACK

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is tactically deployed, either stationary or on the move. Both hostile and friendly aircraft are operating in the general area. Note that this BTS is, in part, an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Two and Platoon Battle Drill One, and should be read in combination with BTS 5005, 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.'

TASK STANDARD:

Enemy aircraft do not surprise the section / platoon. The section / platoon takes effective action to prevent or minimize losses to air attack.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The	section / platoon employs air defence			
measures:				
a.	all available resources are used (camouflage, concealment, cover, dispersion, etc) to hide elements and limit vulnerability			
b.	air attack alarms are established and rehearsed			
c.	immediate action drills upon sighting enemy or unidentified aircraft are established			
d.	weapon control status is promulgated			
e.	air sentries are assigned with specific sectors covering 360 degrees			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
f	f.	aircraft are visually identified			
8	g.	air attack alarm is given IAW SOPs			
1	h.	passive defence - if undetected, the section / platoon holds fire to avoid revealing its position			
i	i.	active defence - if attacked, section / platoon engages immediately with all available weapons within effective ranges			
j	j.	air sentries continue to observe their assigned sectors for additional aircraft			
1	k.	based on enemy's expected use of chemical weapons, and the type of rounds or bombs impacting, or indications of spray, personnel perform NBC immediate action drill			
1	1.	section / platoon reports all enemy and unidentified aircraft actions to higher HQ.			
2. when s		ection / platoon uses air defence measures nary:			
8	a.	shiny items are covered or shaded, particularly windshields and optics			
ł	b.	defensive positions are constructed to protect personnel and vulnerable equipment			
	c.	battle positions are approached from the rear to avoid leaving tracks and destroying cover			
	d.	personnel occupy defensive positions			
6	e.	vehicles hide or adopt turret down or hull			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards				
		down positions whenever possible			
	f.	vehicular movement is limited			
	g.	if detected or attacked, commander evaluates situation and moves section / platoon if tactical situation and direction from higher HQ permits.			
3. a con		ection / platoon uses air defence measures in			
	a.	all personnel are briefed by the convoy commander			
	b.	vehicles and equipment are camouflaged before moving out			
	c.	vehicle interval is selected based on instructions, mission, terrain, threat, etc			
	d.	individual and crew-served weapons are alternated throughout the convoy to cover 360 degrees			
	e.	upon early warning:			
		(1) vehicles disperse to shoulders of the road (off road if possible)			
		(2) vehicles adopt covered and concealed positions if terrain permits			
		(3) troops dismount and take up firing positions			
	f.	if attacked when cover is not available, vehicles maintain or increase interval and use evasive driving techniques.			
4.	The s	ection / platoon uses air defence measures			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
when movin	ng cross country:			
a.	maintains vehicle interval specified in the Op O			
b.	staggers vehicles to avoid linear patterns			
c.	avoids moving and leaving tracks through open areas, mud and fields			
d.	upon early warning, section / platoon halts in place to avoid detection when in an open area			
e.	if detected, section / platoon disperses and if possible vehicles move to covered and concealed positions.			
	air attack is over, the section / platoon ick consolidation and continues with its			

5005 B/C - REACT TO CONTACT / DIRECT FIRE / INDIRECT FIRE

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is moving or stationary. The section / platoon contacts the enemy, or receives fire from enemy individual, crewserved weapons, or indirect weapons. Note that this BTS is an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Two and Platoon Battle Drill One

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon takes appropriate reaction to contact / direct fire / indirect fire

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
The section / platoon lead element comes under contact / direct enemy fire:					
a.	lead s	ection / platoon element takes action:			
	(1)	executes Section Battle Drill Two - 'Reaction to Effective Enemy Fire,' and Section Battle Drill Three - 'Locates the Enemy'			
	(2)	immediately returns fire to destroy or suppress the enemy and takes up the nearest covered positions, employing smoke if necessary			
	(3)	alerts the remainder of the section / platoon to the direction of the enemy, sending 'Contact Report' if necessary			
b.	sectio	n / platoon commanders control			

	Eff	NPrac	Ineff		
	action	:			
	(1)	designate and coordinate fire using fire control orders:			
		(a) Group			
		(b) Range			
		(c) Indication			
		(d) Type of Fire			
	(2)	locate and engage known or suspected enemy positions with well-aimed fire			
	(3)	ensure personnel maintain contact with the personnel on their left and right			
	(4)	ensure personnel maintain contact with their section commanders and report the location of enemy positions			
	(5)	check the status of their personnel			
	(6)	send initial 'Contact Report' to the higher commander.			
c.		n / platoon commander moves up to ad element in contact and:			
	(1)	determines whether or not the section / platoon must move out of the killing zone			
	(2)	determines whether or not he can gain and maintain suppressive fires with his element already in contact			

Sub	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
		d on the volume and accuracy emy fires against the element in ct)			
(3)	make	s an assessment of the situation:			
	(a)	identifies the location of the enemy position and obstacles			
	(b)	identifies the size of the enemy force engaging the unit in contact			
	(c)	identifies the vulnerable flanks			
	(d)	identifies covered and concealed flanking routes to the enemy position			
(4)	(for exwood	mines the next course of action xample: assault; clear bunker, s, building, trench; bypass; contact)			
(5)	calls i	for and adjusts indirect fire as red			
(6)	to the	sends consolidated 'Contact Report' to the higher commander, is given course of action, or decides on course of action:			
	(a)	develops a plan			
	(b)	issues a Frag O			
	(c)	coordinates required support			
(7)	contir	nues with the mission.			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
2.	The section / platoon observe indirect enemy fire:					
	a.	if mo	ving:			
		(1)	personnel and vehicles execute evasive action to avoid impact			
		(2)	crews drop down inside vehicles and close hatches			
		(3) based on enemy's expected use of chemical weapons, and type of rounds impacting, personnel execute NBC Masking drill				
		(4) continue to move out of impact area				
		(5)	commander sends a 'SHELREP' to the higher commander			
	b.	if stat	ionary:			
		(1)	crews drop down inside vehicles and close hatches			
		(2)	based on enemy's expected use of chemical weapons, and type of rounds impacting, personnel execute NBC Masking drill			
		(3)	commander sends a 'SHELREP' to the higher commander			
		(4)	if indirect fire is effectively suppressing the section / platoon:			
			(a) if the mission permits, the section / platoon moves out of the impact area to adequate cover			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	37 (1	EII	NPrac	Ineff
(b) if the mission does no the section / platoon a covered positions and continues with the mis	dopts			
(5) when the indirect fire stops, of open vehicle hatches	crews			
(6) if in MOPP 3 Mask, personn remain in that state until the commander gives the 'all cle				
(7) continue with the mission.				

5006 B/C - REACT TO AMBUSH

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

A section / platoon is on the move, dismounted or mounted. The enemy initiates an ambush. Note that this BTS is an evaluation tool for Section Battle Drill Two and Platoon Battle Drill One, and should be read in combination with BTS 5005, 'React to Contact / Direct Fire / Indirect Fire.'

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon reacts immediately to the ambush by fighting through the ambush to a pre-planned RV, destroying or forcing the enemy to withdraw. The section / platoon continues follow-on operations.

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. I	1. Dismounted section / platoon reacts to an ambush:					
a	l.	imme	mmediately:			
		(1)	daylight - return maximum suppressive fire, assume covered positions, and throw fragmentation and smoke grenades			
		(2)	night - immediately move out of the killing zone, especially if the area is illuminated			
b).	applic	section / platoon commander shouts applicable fire control and movement orders			
С	÷.		through the ambush to a pre-planned sing individual fire and movement			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
d.	sectio	n / platoon commander maintains ol			
e.		n / platoon commander calls for ct fire support:			
	(1)	to isolate the enemy			
	(2)	adjusts fire on any retreating enemy			
f.	person	nnel not in the ambush kill zone take			
	(1)	identify enemy positions			
	(2)	initiate immediate suppressive fires against the enemy			
	(3)	take up covered positions			
	(4)	shift fires as the personnel in the kill zone assault through the ambush			
	(5)	move to the pre-planned RV			
g.	for all	the section / platoon commander accounts for all personnel and equipment after the enemy has withdrawn:			
	(1)	reorganizes as necessary IAW Section Battle Drill Seven and Platoon Battle Drill Three - 'Consolidation,' and IAW BTS 4305, 'Consolidate'			
	(2)	sends a 'Contact Report' to the next higher commander			
	(3)	continues the mission.			

		Sub	-Tasks	s and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
2.	Mour	nted sec	ction /]	platoon reacts to an ambush:			
	a.		shed ven drill:	ehicles carry out the immediate			
		(1)		es / gunners return maximum essive fire			
		(2)		ommander makes a rapid on to drive out or attack			
		(3)		decision is to attack, then the nnel must dismount and attack:			
			(a)	the commander shouts 'Dismount Left (or Right)' to indicate to which side of the vehicle to muster			
			(b)	sentries / gunners continue to fire on the enemy			
			(c)	sentries debus when troops are clear			
			(d)	all prepare to conduct a quick attack			
		(4)	condu	icts the attack			
		(5)	Section Platon 'Cons	anizes as necessary IAW on Battle Drill Seven and on Battle Drill Three - solidation,' and IAW BTS 'Consolidate'			
		(6)		a 'Contact Report' to the next r commander			
		(7)	contin	nues the mission.			

5008 C/D - DENY EQUIPMENT AND SUPPLIES

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

Friendly forces are evacuating their positions, and abandoning equipment and supplies, which they cannot remove. The platoon / company is ordered to deny future use of the equipment and supplies to the enemy. Orders or SOPs include the priority of equipment and supplies to be denied and the extent of denial to be achieved.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company denies equipment and supplies IAW orders / SOPs without injuring personnel. The time required is increased when performing this task in MOPP 3 Mask.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The p denial plan:	platoon / company commander develops a			
a.	prioritizes equipment / supplies to deny, and confirms the extent of denial to be achieved based on orders / SOPs and the equipment / supplies to be abandoned by friendly forces			
b.	prioritizes components / parts to be denied for each type of equipment based on orders, SOPs, or technical references applicable to the type of equipment			
c.	determines the method of denial based on the type of equipment / supplies involved and the manpower, time, explosives, and stores available			
d.	ensures that equipment and supplies protected under the laws of armed conflict			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	(eg. n	nedical supplies) are not destroyed.			
	subordinates know their destruction assignments and				
3. The pequipment /		/ company destroys or disables es:			
a.		bys / disables equipment / supplies, ding spare parts, in priority			
b.		bys / disables components / parts on piece of equipment in priority			
c.	equip establ	if explosives are available, destroys equipment IAW the technical procedures established for each type of equipment, ensuring that:			
	(1)	for AFVs, ammunition is detonated simultaneously with explosive charges and all vehicle openings are closed			
	(2)	charges are in proper contact with the target			
	(3)	charges and firing circuits are properly prepared			
	(4)	personnel are warned and under suitable cover / at appropriate safety distance before firing.			
d.		plosives are not available, employs ple improvised methods to include:			
	(1)	destroying by direct fire			
	(2)	burning the vehicle by igniting the			

Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	fuel tank or using another incendiary device			
(3)	smashing vital components with a sledge hammer or other suitable tool			
(4)	draining hydraulic systems and cutting hoses			
(5)	draining engines of oil and coolant and running them at full throttle until they seize			
(6)	cutting tires.			
4. The platoon / company commander reports to higher HQ once task is complete.				

5009 B/C/D - ESTABLISH A ROADBLOCK / CHECKPOINT

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The element commander receives an order to construct a roadblock / checkpoint. The element is provided an open fire policy and rules of engagement (ROE); information as to the direction of the threat; suitable construction materials, tools, and transportation. Continuous operations (day and night) are envisioned. Civilian population and vehicles are in the area of operation.

TASK STANDARD:

The element plans and constructs the roadblock / checkpoint IAW higher commander's orders. The position and orientation of the barriers prevent passage, or limit entry and exit by personnel and vehicles into or from the specified area.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The element commander receives orders from			
higher HQ to establish a roadblock / checkpoint:			
a. clarifies any questions on the applicable open fire policy and ROE			
b. clarifies the purpose of the roadblock / checkpoint			
c. clarifies the type of roadblock / checkpoint (deliberate or hasty).			
2. The element commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure.'			
3. The element commander selects the roadblock/ checkpoint site:			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a.	sites tactically so that the roadblock / checkpoint cannot be seen more than a short distance away to prevent drivers from avoiding it			
b.	culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends or dips in a road are ideal			
c.	ensures that the roadblock / checkpoint is positioned so it is not a sudden surprise to drivers, giving them enough time to stop safely			
d.	places elements of the roadblock / checkpoint in depth			
e.	considers the balance between force protection and open fire policy when positioning roadblock / checkpoints			
f.	develops security plan			
g.	establish liaison with local civilian authorities.			
	element commander organizes the element to roadblock / checkpoint on a continuous basis:			
a.	assigns vehicle, and personnel search teams			
b.	assigns close-in and far security or support- by-fire positions			
c.	establishes a command and control cell to maintain communications with higher headquarters and control operations.			
5. The e according to				

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a.	sets two parallel obstacles across the road. The barriers should have gaps negotiable only by slowly moving vehicles to allow the search or security teams to observe them closely			
b.	ensures the number and separation of obstacles are based on the amount of traffic which enters the search area			
c.	establishes a second position to hastily block personnel or vehicles attempting to flee			
d.	marks all perimeter barriers, wires, and limits with warning signs. (signs in English, French, and the theatre native language should be used, if available.)			
e.	establishes personnel search areas			
f.	establishes vehicle search areas			
g.	establishes security force positions			
h.	prepares drop holes for searcher protection in the event of problems during the search and to prevent the searchers from masking the security element fires			
i.	ensures there is adequate lighting for night operations			
j.	ensures the civilian population understands the roadblock / checkpoint is a preventive and not a punitive measure			
k.	ensures a translator is present at the roadblock / checkpoint.			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
6.	The e	element maintains security:				
	a.	an app severa / chec vehicle	es an team is positioned and concealed propriate distance (one hundred to al hundred meters) from the roadblock kpoint to prevent the escape of any le or person attempting to turn back sighting the roadblock/checkpoint			
	b.	search	ishes a rest area for personnel near the a area so personnel can be assembled by as a reserve force			
	c.	certai	nes all vehicles and personnel for n items as directed by the element / r commander			
	d.	from j	ops measures for protecting searchers possible explosives (if possible dig the le search area into the ground to et the blasts upward)			
	e.		ensures that the close-in security team's fields of fire are not masked			
	f.		uses sentries and patrols to prevent possible ambush.			
7.	7. The element reacts to disruptions or hostile actions:					
	a.	if civilian personnel are impeding or attempting to dismantle a roadblock / checkpoint:				
		(1)	reports the incident to higher HQ			
		(2)	requests assistance from local authorities to disperse or hold-back			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	the crowd			
	(3) IAW orders and the open fire policy, prevents the obstruction / destruction of the roadblock / checkpoint			
b.	if vehicle(s) / personnel attempt to breach the roadblock / checkpoint without stopping, the element uses minimum force necessary to deter the or prevent the breach.			
	moving the roadblock / checkpoint, if the situation			
a.	establishes SOPs for moving the roadblock / checkpoint			
b.	stores pre-packaged roadblock / checkpoint equipment on vehicles and rehearses setting up quickly			
c.	makes roadblock / checkpoint handover procedures as detailed, such as BTS <u>4311</u> , 'Relief in Place' illustrates.			
	element continually improves the roadblock / as the time and situation permits.			

5011 B/C - CONSTRUCT A WIRE OBSTACLE

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITION

The local commander has ordered the construction of a wire obstacle to enhance the terrain in support of the defensive scheme. Orders to the element commander included the location, type, size, and construction completion time of the wire obstacle. The necessary field defence stores (Class IV) are available. Local protection is being provided by other elements of the subunit/unit.

TASK STANDARD:

The obstacle is completed to the required technical standard within the time allocated. The time required to perform this task is increased when executing it in MOPP 3 Mask.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The element commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure':			
a. work parties are assigned and tasks clearly identified			
b. the element arrives at the obstacle location equipped with wire handling gloves and the required construction stores (thumpers, wire cutters, windlassing sticks)			
2. The obstacle is constructed within the following time standards (Note: Construction rates are the day / night rates for a section sized element expressed in minutes per 100 metres of fence. When a platoon sized element is employed, construction rates (except for the knife rest) will be approximately three times faster): a. low wire – 130/260			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	single concertina (normal) – 33/60			
	c.	single concertina (simplified) – 11/22			
	d.	triple concertina – 66/132			
	e.	wiring Type 4 – 44/88			
	f.	double Apron – 66/132			
	g.	catwire Type 1 – 44/88			
	h.	catwire Type 2 – 77/154			
	i.	catwire Type 3 – 132/264			
	j.	high wire – 132/264			
	k.	American wire – 90/180			
	1.	knife rest – 60/120 for a 3 to 5 metre long and 1.3 metre high knife rest			
	m.	concertina roadblock - 15/30 for a roadblock consisting of six rolls of concertina.			
007/P	ed tecl T-001	obstacle is constructed in accordance with the inical specifications contained in B-GL-320- and in accordance with the following hinical standards:			
	a.	work is performed, when possible, from the friendly side so that personnel are not separated from their shelters/trenches by the obstacle			İ
	b.	angle iron pickets are driven with the open side of the angle facing the enemy			
	c.	actions are taken to muffle the noise caused			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	by driving pickets, particularly at night			
d.	pickets are properly spaced and driven to the required depth (0.5 metres for long pickets) in firm ground			
e.	rows of pickets are staggered according to the type of obstacle being constructed			
f.	concertinas are not over-extended (15-16 metres is normal)			
g.	concertinas are properly joined at pickets			
h.	'cattle fence' wires (horizontal wires fixed to a row of pickets) are properly windlassed to pickets, however, sufficient slack is left in fence wires between each pair of pickets to allow windlassing of the fence wires to the concertinas			
i.	diagonal wires (wires from short pickets to the top of long pickets) cross properly at pickets and properly windlassed			
j.	fence wires are properly windlassed to concertinas midway between pickets or at the pickets, as appropriate to the type of wire obstacle			
k.	for double apron fences, all apron wires are windlassed to diagonal wires wherever they cross			
1.	if the obstacle is to be permanent, all short pickets at the base of diagonal wires should be driven into the ground completely			
m.	the knife rest is securely lashed together			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
n. the concertina road block spans the complete width of the road, the two rows of wire are 10m apart, adjacent rolls are wired together, and roll ends are lightly anchored using pickets or half-filled sand bags. 4. The element commander submits task status reports (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP) to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.			

5013 B/C - LAY / LIFT A PROTECTIVE MINEFIELD

ELEMENT: SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

Intelligence reports have indicated a need for increased perimeter defence. The local commander has submitted to higher a report to lay a protective minefield and authorization has been received. The element has subsequently been assigned the task of laying a mixed protective minefield consisting of DM21 anti-tank (AT) mines and M18A1 Claymore Defensive Weapon Systems (DWS). Orders to the element commander included the minefield location, pattern (random or row), whether mines are to be surface laid or buried, number or mine rows and mine spacing (minimum of 6 metres), quantity, type and location of lanes, fencing requirements, and the time by which the minefield is to be laid. The required mines (Class V) and minefield fencing stores (Class IV) have been dumped on the battle position, but the mines have not been removed from their crate(s). Local protection is being provided by other elements of the subunit/unit.

TASK STANDARD:

The minefield is laid, fenced, reported and accurately recorded within the time allocated. All mines can be located using the CF947 protective minefield record. The minefield is lifted within the time allocated. There are no friendly casualties during laying or lifting. The time required to perform this task is increased when executing it under NBC conditions.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	ement commander conducts battle W BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure':			
1				
	mine laying and fencing parties are assigned and tasks clearly identified			
b. t	the element arrives at the minefield location			
	with the required setting out and mine			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	thum	g stores and hand tools (eg. shovels, per and / or sledgehammer for pickets, cutters) necessary to lay the minefield.			
2. Acco		o the pattern of laying to be employed, out:			
a.	rando	m pattern:			
	(1)	the position and type of each mine is clearly marked before laying begins			
	(2)	personnel are assigned laying tasks either individually or in pairs			
	(3)	instructions to each individual/pair specify clearly the route to be followed in and out of the minefield and the order in which mines are to be laid (lay tapes to mark safe routes at night)			
b.	row p	pattern:			
	(1)	reference points (landmarks, bearings) are selected			
	(2)	routes to/from the minefield are selected			
	(3)	landmarks and end row markers are set out, and row(s) are marked with signals cable, white mine tape, or other suitable material			
	(4)	lanes or gaps are set out, and the centre-line of patrol lanes are marked with signals cable or cord, fastened to spikes driven flush with the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	ground			
	(5) mines/fencing stores are distributed.			
	nines are unpacked and fused. Empty crates mine bases as required, or are disposed of.			
4. If ord	lered, perimeter fencing is erected:			
a.	fence is erected in a clockwise manner starting at the near left hand corner leaving a gap in the rear side fence until mine laying is complete			
b.	fencing party keeps ahead of the leading mine laying party			
c.	existing fences are used where available			
d.	enemy side fence is not obvious to the enemy but is visible enough to those who know its approximate position			
e.	fence does not conform to the shape of the minefield, nor does it give away its length/depth (eg. is not sited at a constant distance from the nearest mine and does not run on the same bearing as the outer mine rows)			
f.	fence is sited a minimum of 15 metres from the nearest mine			
g.	fence consists of a minimum of a single strand or wire approximately waist high suspended on pickets about 15 metres apart			
h.	fence is signed with mine signs located not more than 50 metres apart			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
i.	if for any reason the laying party is withdrawn during laying, the perimeter fence is completed and then reopened when laying restarts.			
laying rates sized eleme Mines are a hand-carrie night are no section size	element maintains the following typical mine (Note: Laying rates are based on a platoon- ent, working by day without interference. Iready removed from their crate(s) and are d no more than 200 metres. Laying rates at brandly half the daylight laying rate. When a d element is employed, laying rates will be ely one third of platoon laying rate):			
a.	40 buried DM21 AT mines per hour			
b.	80 surface laid DM21 AT mines per hour			
c.	40 M18A1 Claymore DWS per hour.			
	element maintains the standards for the arming of individual mines.			
a.	if buried, holes for individual AT mines are dug deep and wide enough and the bottom is tamped so that the top of the mine is 50mm below ground level, 'bridging' of the hole by a tank/APC track is prevented, and so as to provide a firm base for the mine			
b.	appropriate measures are taken to ensure the proper actuation of mines in unfavourable conditions (eg. laid on foundations/bases and / or in waterproof bags)			
c.	mines are armed using the correct procedures, when ordered by the officer/NCO in charge, and under			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		supervision			
	d.	all mines, whether surface laid or buried, are camouflaged to greatest extent possible			
	e.	M18A1 Claymore DWS are set in the command-detonated mode only.			
7. layin		element performs random pattern mine			
	a.	the distance between each laying party, if possible is never less than 20 metres			
	b.	mines are armed starting on the enemy side and working back to the friendly side.			
OR					
8.	The e	element performs row pattern mine laying:			
	a.	rows are laid starting on the enemy side and working back to the friendly side			
	b.	the element commander paces along the pre-selected row(s) and indicates to each soldier the location of his or her mine			
	c.	mines are not located within the required safe distance from any lanes/gaps			
	d.	if further trips to get more mines are required, a guide remains at the beginning of the row until it is completed.			
9. Any remaining perimeter fencing and marking is completed.					
10. repor		element commander submits task status gher headquarters IAW unit SOP.			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
Minefield R instructions minefield is Minefield C MINLAYR	element commander completes the Protective Lecord (DND 2147) in accordance with the on the reverse side of the form. If the of sufficient size and complexity, a Completion Report (DND 2109/E122D EP, which includes the minefield record) may be in lieu of a Protective Minefield Record.			
minefield to caused by e Enemy inter	element conducts periodic inspections of the determine if there has been any interference nemy action, artillery, animals or weather. If there is reported to higher. Any damage of fencing and marking is repaired.			
13. The 6	element lifts the protective minefield:			
a.	mines are located using the CF947 Protective Minefield Record and / or a mine detector. The individual who laid the mine recovers the same mine if possible			
b.	mines are recovered starting from the friendly side of the minefield			
c.	mines are disarmed using the correct procedures and removed from the minefield			
d.	mines are cleaned and repacked for future use			
e.	the minefield fencing and any markers (landmarks, end row markers, etc) are removed			
f.	the element commander destroys the Protective Minefield Record, the Minefield Completion Report (DND 2109/E122D MINLAYREP, as applicable.			
14. If the	e position is to be abandoned and the			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
minefield has not been previously fenced/marked, then the minefield is fenced/marked prior to final abandonment.			

5014 B - LAY A NUISANCE MINEFIELD

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is ordered to lay a nuisance minefield, designed to hinder the enemy's use of an area/route, or to reinforce another obstacle (eg. craters, abatis, etc). Orders include the location of the minefield, Class IV (field defences) and Class V (ammunition, including mines and explosives) allocation, any obstacle restrictions, fencing / marking requirements, and the time by which the minefield must be laid.

TASK STANDARD:

The minefield is designed and sited in accordance with the fundamentals of obstacle employment and the required obstacle intent. The minefield is laid and marked (if ordered) within the time allotted. All mines can be located using the minefield record. There are no friendly casualties from a failure to observe mine safety. The time required is increased when conducting this task under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure			
IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The section commander establishes / coordinates			
task site security IAW BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations			
Security':			
a. sweeping the site for enemy			
b. establishing local defensive positions on			
site			
c. rehearsing alarms			
d. carrying personal weapons and equipment			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		during the task			
	e.	maintaining camouflage, noise/light discipline, and MOPP level.			
	inefiel	on Commander conducts detailed siting of d, ensuring that the fundamentals of obstacle are observed.			
4. marke		ance minefields are not normally fenced or ordered, perimeter fencing is erected:			
	a.	fence is erected in a clockwise manner starting on the friendly side, leaving a gap in the fence on the friendly side until mine- laying is complete			
	b.	existing fences are used where available			
	c.	fence is sited a minimum of 15 metres from the nearest mine			
	d.	fence consists of a minimum of a single strand or wire approximately waist high suspended on pickets about 15 metres apart			
	e.	fence is erected properly (pickets anchored, wire tied/windlassed, etc)			
	f.	fence is signed with mine signs located not more than 50 metres apart.			
5. rando	The s m patto	ection lays the nuisance minefield (using a ern):			
	a.	as a guideline, a section working by day and without interference maintains a laying rate of 15 buried antitank mines per hour or 30 surface laid antitank mines per hour. Deep buried mines require significantly			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	more time. Rates are 50% less at night or under NBC conditions.			
b.	personnel laying mines are instructed fully on the aim of the minefield			
c.	the position of each mine on the ground is clearly indicated before laying begins			
d.	personnel laying mines work in pairs and each pair is detailed to lay specific mines			
e.	orders to each pair clearly specify the route to be followed (normally in and out along the same route) and the order in which the mines are to be laid. In cases where doubt may arise as to the route, or when laying is being carried out during darkness, tape is laid before laying starts to mark safe routes. The tape is recovered by the laying party when finally leaving each site			
f.	the work is organized such that there is a minimum of 20m between pairs of personnel laying mines			
g.	if buried, holes for individual AT mines are dug deep and wide enough and the bottom is tamped so that the top of the mine is 50mm below ground level, 'bridging' of the hole by a tank/APC track is prevented, and that a firm base for the mine is provided			
h.	appropriate measures are taken to ensure the proper actuation and laying of mines in special environments (eg. requirement for waterproofing or supports, depth/spacing of mines and direction of laying/arming when emplacing mines under water)			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
i.	all mines, whether surface laid or buried, are camouflaged to greatest extent possible			
j.	M18A1 Claymore defensive weapon systems (DWS) are set in the command detonated mode only			
k.	if anti-disturbance devices are being employed, the final arming is done by one man, and the timing of this arming is rigidly controlled by the NCOIC.			
-	uired, a safe lane is properly fenced and day / night operations.			
7. The s status report Report (E12 completion of				
minefield re	element commander properly completes a cord (included within DND 2109) and higher HQ as soon as possible after empletion.			

5015 B - EXECUTE A CRATER OBSTACLE

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is ordered to execute a crater obstacle. Siting of the obstacle has been coordinated with the supported manoeuvre commander and a reconnaissance report is available.

TASK STANDARD:

The section executes a crater obstacle within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. The gap created is a minimum of 40 metres in depth (refer to note below) and rows of craters are angled 45 degree across the regular flow of traffic. The crater obstacle is nuisance mined and an accurate minefield record is completed. The crater is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles and blocks or disrupts an enemy main battle tank. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it under NBC conditions.

Note: Resource limitations may restrict training to the firing of only one row of three craters, in which case only the procedures employed will be evaluated and not the depth of the gap.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure':			
2. The section commander obtains technical information from the reconnaissance report (eg. DND 2103/E120B OBSRECCEREP).			
3. The section acquires and prepares all explosives, accessories and equipment needed for the demolition. It prepares charges in the rear area to minimize time on site (eg. chamber and priming charges).			
4. The section commander establishes / coordinates			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards								
task s Secur		urity IAW BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations							
	a.	sweeping the site for enemy							
	b.	establishing local defensive positions on site							
	c.	rehearsing alarms							
	d.	carrying personal weapons and equipment during the task							
	e.	maintaining camouflage, noise/light discipline, and MOPP level.							
	5. The section commander marks the auger/camouflet/shaped charge holes IAW the reconnaissance report.								
6.	The s								
	a.	drills holes to required 2.4m depth							
	b.	priming charges are properly prepared with dual detonating cord leads							
	c.	loads explosives properly in the holes with each priming charge positioned at half the depth of the main cratering charge							
	d.	stems holes properly with auger cuttings							
	e.	connects firing circuit properly.							
OR									
7.	The s	section craters using camouflet procedures:							
	a.	chamber and priming charges are properly prepared with dual detonating cord leads,							

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	ensuring that they are moulded to fit down the tube with little or no resistance			
b.	drives camouflet tubes to the required depth (2.4m can be achieved when using the adapter and by digging down slightly before starting to drive the tube)			
c.	withdraws tubes a minimum of 0.5m to prevent damage to the tubes during firing of the chambering charges, employing the correct procedure to withdraw tubes in the event that they become stuck			
d.	confirms the depth of the hole using the tamping rod			
e.	inserts prepared chamber charges down the tubes to the bottom of the holes, using a tamping rod to assist insertion as required but ensuring that excessive force or pressure is not used			
f.	on order, connects firing circuit			
g.	fires chamber charges on order of the section commander, observing safety distance			
h.	once the 'all clear' has been given, compares the new depth of the holes with the mark from the previous measurement to determine the chamber size			
i.	takes decision decides to use each chamber as is, or to fire another chamber charge			
j.	takes appropriate safety precautions before loading chambers with explosives (waits 30 minutes for the chamber to cool or pours			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff	
		approximately 10 litres of water down the hole and waits 10 minutes)				
	k.	loads explosives properly in the holes with each priming charge positioned at half the depth of the main cratering charge				
	1.	removes camouflet tubes completely, if they have not been previously fully removed, ensuring that detonating cord leads are not pulled or damaged during removal				
	m.	stems holes properly with available material				
	n.	on order, connects firing circuit.				
8.	Section	on craters with shaped charges:				
	a.	on order, connects shaped charges to firing circuit and completes firing circuit				
	b.	fires shaped charges on order of the section commander, ensuring that safety distance is observed				
	c.	ensures holes are at the required depth (an auger or camouflet set may be required to clean or finish the hole)				
	d.	takes appropriate safety precautions before loading holes with explosives (waits 30 mins for the hole/metal slug to cool or pours approx 10l of water down the hole and waits 10 mins).				
	9. The section fires the demolition on order of the section commander, ensuring that the required safety distance is observed.					

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
10. The section performs proper misfire procedures,			
taking the required safety precautions.			
11. The section nuisance mines the craters.			
12. The section commander submits task status reports IAW unit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP and, on completion, E120D OBSEXREP).			
13. The section commander completes the minefield record (included on the combined Minefield Completion Report, DND 2109/E122D MINLAYREP) accurately and submits it to higher headquarters.			

5016 B - CONSTRUCT AN ABATIS

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is ordered to construct an abatis. Siting of the obstacle has been coordinated with the supported manoeuvre commander and a reconnaissance report is available. The site selected complies with the requirements for an effective abatis.

TASK STANDARD:

The section creates an abatis within 25 percent of the time estimated in the reconnaissance report. A light abatis is 20 to 30m deep and a heavy abatis is 50 to 100m deep. The obstacle is tied to existing or reinforced obstacles. There are 10 to 25 trees on each side of the road. A minimum of 75 percent of the trees are attached to their stumps. The abatis stops or delays an enemy main battle tank. If time permits and authorization given, the section will improve the abatis with mines, booby traps, and wire.

Note: Environmental regulations may preclude the tree felling necessary to construct an abatis. Training opportunities should be sought where land clearance is required as part of training area development or a purpose built facility should be employed using telephone poles or similar timber as targets. As a minimum, training will include a walk through of charge placement and other aspects of abatis construction.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure			
IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The section commander obtains technical			
information from the reconnaissance report (eg. DND 2103/E120B OBSRECCEREP).			
2103/E120B OBSRECCEREF).			
3. The section acquires and prepares all explosives,			
accessories and equipment, as required, to execute the			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff				
			we means is to be used, the section the rear area to minimize time on the							
	secu		commander establishes / coordinates AW BTS 3001, 'Maintain Operations							
a.		sweep	ing the site for enemy							
b		establ site	stablishing local defensive positions on ite							
c.		rehear	rsing alarms							
d			ng personal weapons and equipment g the task							
e.	•	mainta discip								
5. The section commander confirms DND 2103 and marks trees to be cut. Note: Selects trees with a minimum of 60cm in diameter and 6m high to oppose tracked vehicles, and selects trees spaced 3 to 4m apart to provide sufficient obstacle density.										
6. T tools:	The se	ection	constructs an abatis using pioneer							
a.		cuts tr	rees on one side of the trail or road:							
		(1)	fells trees at a 45 degree angle to the road, with the tops toward the enemy							
		(2)	cuts the trees 1.5m above the ground							
		(3)	does not cut the trees completely through the trunk. Allows the trunk to remain attached to the stump to impede the enemy in clearing the							

Sub-Tasks and Standards						NPrac	Ineff	
			obsta	cle				
	b.	oppos	site sid	me procedures, cuts trees on the e of the road and fells them on eviously cut trees.				
7.	The s	section	constr	ucts an abatis using explosives:				
	a.	if pos	sible, p	prepares a test shot on a tree:				
		(1)	(1) prepares charge based on the charge calculations in the reconnaissance report					
		(2) for cutting charges:						
			(a)	removes the bark prior to placing the charge				
			(b)	places the charge 1.5m above the ground on the side of the direction of fall				
			(c)	primes the charge in the centre of the outside face of the explosives				
			(d)	firmly attaches the charge with tape, wire, or twine				
	b.	for borehole charges (for timber with circumference greater than 2.35m):						
		(1)	,					

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		(2) places charge(s) in the hole(s), and stems remainder of the hole(s) with damp earth			
	c.	if required, (eg. tree is leaning the wrong way or is affected by a strong wind), places a 'kicker' charge of approximately 0.5 kg (1 block C4) two-thirds of the way up the tree on the opposite side of the main charge, and initiated simultaneously with the cutting / borehole charges			
	d.	fires a test shot and adjusts the charges as necessary			
	e.	places charges on all trees to be felled IAW para 7a			
	f.	lays out / connects firing circuit properly.			
	lition c	ng explosives, the section fires the on order of the section commander, ensuring tired safety distance is observed.			
9. taking		equired safety precautions.			
10.	The s	ection improves the abatis if time permits:			
	a.	lays mines and booby traps (if authority is given) within the abatis			
	b.	lays wire throughout the abatis			
	c.	use wire rope to join trees together beginning on the enemy side.			
	ts IAW	rection commander submits task status v unit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP and, on, E120D OBSEXREP).			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
12. The section commander completes the minefield record (included on the combined Minefield Completion Report, DND 2109/E122D MINLAYREP) accurately and submits it to higher HQ.			

5017 B - FIRE A PREPARED DEMOLITION

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is ordered to take over a preliminary demolition target. The target has been prepared to State 1 (SAFE) by a field engineer section, which must move to prepare another target/obstacle. The initiation set has been prepared and the mines necessary to nuisance mine the fired demolition have been placed in cache location close to the obstacle. Enemy contact is not expected for 15 minutes following rearward passage of the last friendly vehicle. Some iterations of training on this task are performed in MOPP 3 Mask.

TASK STANDARD:

The section prepares the demolition to State 2 (ARMED), fires the demolition on withdrawal of remaining friendly elements, and mines the obstacle within 15 minutes. The time required to complete this task is increased when conducted under NBC conditions.

Sub-Tasks and Standards				Ineff
1. Section commander ensures receipt of a proper hand over of the obstacle from the engineer section which prepared the target to include:				
a.	general information including the target number, type of target, grid reference			
b.	charge locations			
c.	firing circuit layout			
d.	firing point location and location of the initiation set			
e.	work still required to prepare the demolition target			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
f	f.	cache location for mines required to nuisance mine the target after firing			
£	g.	misfire procedures			
ŀ	h.	hand over of the DND 913 Demolition Order (for a preliminary demolition with any restrictions placed on its execution)			
i	i.	hand over of the minefield record (included within DND 2109 Minefield Completion Report) started by the engineer section.			
		withdrawal of friendly elements, the section nolition:			
8	a.	if any restrictions have been placed on its firing, the section commander seeks authority to fire from the Authorized Commander IAW the DND 913			
ł	b.	connects all components of the firing circuit and fires the demolition.			
3. abatis).		on nuisance mines the target (eg. crater or			
		on reports the results of the demolition using EXREP.			
	(DNI	on commander completes the minefield 2 2109) and submits it to higher s.			

5018 B - SET BOOBY TRAPS

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is tasked to set booby traps in a given area or facility. Orders include commander's intent for booby trapping, the location of area or facility to be booby trapped, any restrictions, marking requirements and time by which the task is to be completed. No reconnaissance or detailed planning has been previously conducted for this task. Booby traps may be set in conjunction with other obstacles and may be either improvised or actuated using the standard firing device. No iterations of training on this are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section set booby traps IAW the commander's intent within the time allotted. Booby traps are properly constructed and recorded.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The section commander plans and conducts reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance':			
a. determines time, labour and materials available and determines the exact position and design for each booby trap that is to be set			
b. design meets the international protocol / restrictions on the employment of booby traps			
c. if required, prepares and submits a reconnaissance report (DND 2103 Obstacle			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		Recce Report / E120B OBSRECCEREP, if available).			
	d.	requests and acquires explosives, accessories and other construction materials necessary to set the booby traps, if not already allocated in orders.			
3.	The s	section sets booby traps:			
	a.	inspects all firing devices to ensure that they have all of the required parts and they function properly			
	b.	the commander establishes a control point, ensuring that one NCO remains at the control point in charge of all of the explosives and firing devices that are to be used			
	c.	the commander details and marks safe routes to each booby trap, unless the track plan is obvious to all users			
	d.	the laying parties are kept as small as possible, with each booby trap being laid by one person or two people at the most			
	e.	parties are dispersed to avoid interference with one another or unnecessary casualties in the event of an explosion			
	f.	the commander explains to each person exactly what is to be done at each booby trap			
	g.	the parties properly place and conceal the charge, report to the commander when the task is completed and guard the trap until			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	ordered otherwise			
h.	the commander inspects each booby trap to ensure that it is properly laid and concealed			
i.	the commander orders all personnel to return to the control point via the marked route, ensuring that any equipment or spare stores are removed			
j.	the commander ensures that all personnel are out of danger before arming any booby traps			
k.	the commander or 2IC arms all traps, using a logical sequence of arming			
1.	upon withdrawal from the area, the armer removes any safe path markings.			
in friendly t	ordered, the section marks all booby traps set erritory IAW the method of marking and eiffied in orders.			
reports IAW available) ar	rection commander submits task status vanit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP, if and reports completion of the booby traps SEXREP, if available) immediately to higher			
record(s) (eg available) ar	section commander completes a booby trap g. DND 2109 / E122D MINLAYREP, if and submits it to the HQ authorizing the booby in as possible after setting the booby trap.			

5019 B - CLEAR BOOBY TRAPS

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section is ordered to clear a two to three storey building and immediate surroundings of booby traps. Orders include the degree of damage and risk that will be accepted, whether booby traps are to be disposed of or only marked and reported, and the time by which the clearance must be completed. The area is secure. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section searches and clears the building and surrounding area IAW established procedures and within the time allotted. No casualties are suffered as a result of using improper clearance drills.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section commander conducts battle procedure			
IAW BTS 1001 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The section commander plans and prepares for the clearance:			
a. if available, acquires floor plans and any other information concerning the building to determine number of parties required and develop a clearance plan			
b. ensures the required stores and equipment is acquired and prepared for the clearance.			
3. The section commander, making use of any information acquired during planning and preparation, conducts a visual reconnaissance of the building and surrounding area to decide on a suitable location for a control point, a place of entry into the building, etc.			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
4.		ection commander establishes and the search/clearance of the control point.			
5. surro	5. The section searches and clears the area surrounding the building:				
	a.	the section commander assigns searching responsibilities by area			
	b.	searchers search the area outside of the building for trip wires, command wires, booby traps and mines using proper searching techniques and taking appropriate safety precautions			
	c.	section disposes of booby traps IAW methods appropriate to the booby trap(s) and using proper techniques associated with each disposal method employed			
	d.	section marks areas following clearance:			
		(1) marks the cleared area			
		(2) marks the boundaries of any area still containing (or suspected of containing) mines or booby traps.			
	ction t	to commencing the search of the building, urns off electricity and gas services, if time permits.			
7. to gai		ection commander assigns a pair of searchers to the building:			
	a.	effects an entry into the building, taking the necessary precautions concerning entry via doorsteps, doors and windows and, if required, gains entry via a wall or the roof			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
b.	withd effect	raws to control point once an entry is ed.			
ing, est	ablish	commander and assistant enter the an interior control point, and conduct issance:			
a.	clears traps	path to the control point of booby			
b.	marks point	s route from point of entry to control			
c.		rms or formulates search plan at the ol point:			
	(1)	determines how rooms can be safely entered			
	(2)	decides which rooms will be searched first			
	(3)	determines final search party organization, incorporating precautions such as maximum of two personnel per room, one floor at a time, half the rooms on that floor, and dispersal between parties searching different rooms			
d.	the clo	earance party inside the building to terior control point, and assigns nnel to search rooms.			
e.	contro enteri	s someone or a sign at the exterior ol point to prevent others from ng the building until it is cleared and nitor the search/clearance operation			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		by radio.			
9.	9. Searchers search their respective rooms in the correct order:				
	a.	floors and furniture			
	b.	walls, including doors, windows, fireplaces, built in-cupboards, etc			
	c.	fixtures including light switches and pictures.			
	d.	other moveable items.			
10.	Searc	hers observe safety precautions:			
	a.	clears all sides of doors before opening / closing them			
	b.	opens doors, windows, drawers, cupboards, etc, moves furniture and performs other hazardous tasks remotely using pulling cables			
	c.	when entering through a window, uses a plank to reach the floor on the other side well away from the window			
	d.	once cleared, leaves doors (wedged open), drawers, cupboards, etc open and marks them 'CLEAR' with date of clearance			
	e.	marks routes through the building			
	f.	uses a remote flash in all dark areas prior to entering			
	g.	marks everything proven safe as such			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards					
	h.	implements a rest plan				
	i.	stops searching if distracted.				
	ner or n	hers mark doors to rooms to indicate not booby traps were found and then report to commander.				
	searche	ection commander details next room or floor ed and, if necessary, establishes a new rol point.				
	letion o	hers return to interior control point upon of the search and exit under control of the mander.				
situ, c	found v lisrupti	ection commander decides how any booby will be disposed of (eg. pulling, destroying in ing, or neutralizing/disarming), or if they are marked and reported.				
15. perso		oby traps are to be disposed of, clearance spose of booby traps:				
	a.	minimum personnel are employed				
	b.	method of disposal is appropriate to the type of booby trap				
	c.	proper technique / procedure is used to dispose of the booby traps				
	d.	safety precautions are observed (eg. employment of minimum personnel in clearance, observation of safety distances, waiting periods following pulling, etc)				
	e.	if required / applicable, protective measures are employed.				
16.	Follo	wing completion of search (and clearance if				

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	JJəuI
applicable), the section commander marks the building with a permanent sign including date, time, unit/personal identifier, 'NO TRAPS', 'TRAPS CLEARED' or, if booby traps have been left in the building, marks it with booby trap signs.			
17. The section commander submits task status reports to higher headquarters IAW unit SOPs (eg. E102A ENGTASKREP).			

5020 B/C - PREPARE A SITE FOR FIBUA

ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section / platoon is in support of a force establishing the defence in a built-up area (BUA). The element receives orders to conduct FIBUA operations as part of the commander's intent. Orders include location and buildings to be occupied, level of protection to be provided and time task to be completed. Site security to be provided by all elements. The time required is increased when conducting this task under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The section / platoon prepares the site for FIBUA operations to provide the intended protection and the stages of building preparation desired by the force commander within the allotted time. The site must provide both an efficient weapons platform and protection from enemy fire. Preparatory work must not compromise the intended use of the site.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The section / platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The section / platoon commander conducts a reconnaissance to confirm buildings and contents to conduct the operation IAW orders.			
3. The section / platoon commander briefs subordinates on the level of the operation as either stage 1,2, or 3.			
4. The section / platoon commander supervises the advice and assistance provided by his section / platoon during the operation.			
5. The section / platoon constructs a FIBUA OP. The			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	following should be noted when selecting buildings for suitable CSWS fire positions:				
:	a.	the building must be of sturdy masonry or solid construction			
1	b.	the ceiling must be a minimum of 2.2m high			
,	c.	the floor of the room must be a minimum of $5.4 \text{m x } 7.5 \text{m}$			
(d.	there must be at least 2.5 m ² of room openings (an open door standard size is adequate).			
6.	Build	ing preparation:			
	a.	Stage 1. The selection of buildings and alternate buildings. Fire positions and OPs in place, and cellars prepared usually due to strongest point of protection. Defenders able to survive and carry out essential administration and fight up to 8 hours			
	b.	Stage 2. Buildings prepared to withstand bombardment and infantry attack. Fortified firing positions and mouseholes to permit freedom of movement. Defenders able to survive and carry out essential administration and fight up to 24 hours			
	c.	Stage 3. Alternate buildings prepared to stages 1 & 2 with connecting routes. Obstacles, wiring and booby trapping completed, and must be sited to achieve surprise. The defenders are able to survive and carry out essential administration, and fight up to 24 hours			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
d.	Note: There can be no fixed design for construction of firing platforms. Each platform must suit the particular weapon system, and normally is improvised from local materials. Platforms built entirely of sandbags are very heavy and should not be constructed if there is doubt about the strength of the supporting floor.			
7. Engir following:	neers advise and may assist with the			
a.	blocking all unused doors, windows and chimneys with sandbags and mattresses			
b.	wire dangerous approaches inside and out			
c.	remove flammable materials			
d.	remove stairs or block with wire and / or boards			
e.	make large holes to allow men to move between floors using ropes or ladders			
f.	convert basements or dig shelters with overhead protection			
g.	provide a tunnel or trench exit from a mouse-hole on the ground floor			
h.	knock glass out of all windows to be used as firing positions, and nail a grenade screen over the frame			
i.	erect barricades of sandbags in rooms 1m back from windows, fix barbed wire between window sills and base of sandbags			
j.	support ceilings with timber and sandbags			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		so that the floor above can be sandbagged			
	k.	make small holes in upper floors to enable grenades to be drooped through			
	1.	construct mouseholes as necessary			
	m.	fortify exteriors of buildings not to be occupied, as a deception measure, if time permits.			
8. status		ection / platoon commander submits task s to higher HQ IAW unit SOPs.			
protect follow	entified etive charing po	ening buildings: If suitable buildings cannot l, then hardening facilities to improve their naracteristics may be necessary. The bints should be considered when planning the g of a building to resist weapons effects:			
	a.	shored-up ceilings to strengthen cellars or rooms. The reinforcement of a room must not block the exits, of which there should be more than one			
	b.	the more stories there are above that which is occupied, the more likely is it that the effects of conventional shell fire or bombing will not penetrate to the room concerned			
	c.	demolishing a building on top of a framework in the occupied room may provide excellent protection, but care must be taken not to draw the attention of the enemy by doing so			
	d.	interior traverses, sandbag walls, or furniture filled with rubble gives added protection against lighter weapons.			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		esses can provide some protection st shrapnel			
e.	equipo better anothe	rely feasible to provide fire fighting ment throughout a building. It is to develop an alternative position in er building that can be occupied if the uilding catches fire			
f.	aroun	tive obstacles are just as necessary d buildings as in the open; they must ed to achieve surprise.			
g.	streng	Before work is carried out to then a building, technical advise or ance should be obtained to ensure			
	(1)	braces used to post up ceilings are strong enough and are suitable located and secured;			
	(2)	floors are not overloaded			
	(3)	care must be taken to avoid removing load bearing walls.			

5021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A SHELTER

ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct a timber frame or squared wood shelter (bunker or OP). Orders include the anticipated threat, the unit to be supported, the general location of the shelter, and the time by which construction is to be completed. The shelter may be underground or above ground, as applicable to the tactical situation, etc. The required heavy equipment and construction materials (eg. timber, squared wood, CGI, back hoe, etc) are available. No iterations of training on this task are performed under NBC conditions.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon constructs the shelter at the required location within the time allotted in orders. No damage to the shelter structure or personnel injuries are incurred as a result of improper shelter design or construction.

Sub-Tasks and Standards			Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure			
IAW BTS 1001, 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. The reconnaissance party conducts a			
reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer /			
Pioneer Reconnaissance.' The supported commander is			
advised on the most appropriate structure (underground,			
above ground, or natural shelters such as caves, mines,			
tunnels, existing buildings) based on the anticipated threat, terrain, and resources available (eg. labour,			
equipment, material and time).			
equipment, material and time).			
3. The shelter design is completed, ensuring that the			
following criteria are observed:			
a. shelter is sited using available cover and			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	concealment to the greatest extent possible, and is not sited along natural drainage courses			
b.	adequate internal space is provided for the number of personnel to occupy the shelter and the functions to be performed within (eg. space for litters in a unit medical station)			
c.	required overhead protection (OHP) is determined based on anticipated threat			
d.	columns / uprights and roof joists / bearers are properly sized based on the span (eg. width) of the shelter, the dead load weight of the OHP and any anticipated live loads			
e.	subject to the NBC threat, ventilation openings are provided			
f.	entrance and exit passageways have a minimum clear width of 1.5 metres following the settling / swelling of wall structures after construction			
g.	emergency exits are provided for large shelters in case the main doorways are blocked			
h.	for above ground shelters, blast walls are designed to:			
	(1) protect shelter walls			
	(2) protect the front of open doorways while allowing two ways of approaching each doorway (eg. from each side)			

344

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	i.	grenade sumps / missile traps, if required, are incorporated			
	j.	blackout curtains are provided at all openings			
	k.	drainage structures, if required, are incorporated.			
4. receip		of material is prepared and submitted, and e required material is confirmed.			
5. ensur obser	ing tha	platoon constructs the shelter IAW the design t the following construction details are			
	a.	for underground shelters, the excavation is sufficiently large to permit unimpeded construction of the shelter in situ, with due consideration for the safe angle of repose of the soil			
	b.	proper connections are made between structural members (eg. columns, capsills, groundsills, roof joists, spreaders) and between sheeting / sheathing material (eg. both wall and roofing material) and structural members			
	c.	underground walls are properly secured in place along groundsills using pickets			
	d.	underground trestle type side and end walls are properly secured in place using pickets			
	e.	underground shelter walls are properly backfilled using sandbags:			
		(1) sandbags are turned inside out so			

Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	that the seams are on the inside			
(2)	sandbags are doubled if filling with loose sand			
(3)	sandbags are laid in horizontal layers or "courses" with the first course consisting of sandbags laid head on ("headers") and the second course laid lengthways ("stretchers"). Subsequent layers are composed alternately of headers and stretchers			
(4)	wall is correctly bonded by staggering vertical joints between sandbags in different courses			
(5)	sandbag necks and seams are not exposed in the outer face of the wall			
(6)	corners of each sandbag are tucked in as it is laid			
(7)	each sandbag is shaped and compacted			
(8)	wall corners are properly constructed using 3/4 full sandbags, as required			
(9)	the face of a sandbag revetment has a slope of 4:1, and the base, which must be on firm ground, is dug at a slope of 1:4 to ensure that sandbags are at right angles to the slope being revetted			
(10)	a free standing sandbag wall higher than 1.5 m is constructed with the intervening space between the two			

	Sub-Tasks and Standard	ds	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	sides of the wall fille	ed with earth			
	(11) sandbags in a sandba need only be laid on however, courses of correctly bonded, us courses of headers a with intervening spa compacted soil	e row deep, sandbags are ing alternate nd stretchers,			
	(12) sandbags in a sandba laid a minimum of to each course and sho more than three cour additional reinforcer	wo rows deep in uld not be laid rses high without			
f.	roof is properly waterproof heavy duty waterproofing r over the roof sheeting befor with OHP material and and on top of the OHP and secu	material is laid re backfilling other layer is laid			
g.	OHP is properly compacted	d in place			
h.	access trenches are properly sloped to prevent water from shelter				
i.	the shelter, its approaches a structures / equipment (eg. defences) are properly cam concealed from ground and sensors	generators, local ouflaged and			
j.	blast walls are properly cor	nstructed.			
	atoon commander submits IAW SOPs.	periodic task			

5201 B - PROVIDES EXPLOSIVE ASSISTANCE TO DIGGING

ELEMENT: PNR SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The section receives orders to assist in the digging of vehicle and / or personnel protective positions in very hard/frozen ground using explosives. Orders include where the positions are to be constructed and the time by which the excavation is to be completed. The required explosives and accessories are available.

TASK STANDARD:

The sections reconnoitres positions, determines charge requirements, and excavates, prepares, and fires charges. No casualties are suffered as a result of using improper demolition procedures.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. Party commander accurately calculates charge depth and explosive quantity requirements based on:			
a. the size and number of positions required			
b. charge spacing between 1 and 1.5 times the charge depth, depending upon the soil characteristics. A test shot should be fired.			
2. Party digs outer channel to assist in producing a clean excavation face.			
3. Party marks out hole locations IAW required spacing.			
4. Party excavates holes to required depth not to exceed 1.2m using appropriate equipment (eg. 'dibbers')			
5. Party commander calculates sufficient length of double detonating cord leads that are required to connect			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
the charges to the trunk line.					
6.	Party	prepares charges:			
	a.	ensures good contact exists between the explosive and detonating cord			
	b.	ensures charges fit easily into holes excavated at para 4			
	c.	charges are primed with double detonating cord leads to ensure initiation of the charges.			
7. prope		loads charges, ensuring that holes are mmed with earth and tamped.			
8. Party properly lays out the trunk line or ring main, as applicable, and connects it to the detonating cord leads from the charges.					
9. prepa		commander ensures initiation set is properly d connected to the trunk line/ring main.			
		commander fires the charges, ensuring ety precautions are observed prior to and g.			
11. excav 10.		e loose material and repeats para 3 through			

SUSTAINMENT

6001 D - COORDINATE INTEGRAL COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT

ELEMENT: ADMIN COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The Administration Company is conducting its primary support mission. Provision of CSS must be coordinated at unit level. Unit administration and the provision of integral CSS should be specifically detailed in SOPs. Enemy contact is a possibility.

TASK STANDARD:

Mission accomplishment is not hindered by a lack of CSS planning. All elements receive the necessary combat supplies, equipment, and personnel to carry out their assigned mission. Integral CSS is effectively executed IAW SOPs.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	. The c	company command post plans CSS:			
	a.	forecasts anticipated requirements			
	b.	establishes resupply priorities based on the tactical situation and SOPs			
	c.	coordinates and consolidates unit administrative reports and returns			
	d.	provides advice to the unit commander on CSS matters and plans			
	e.	coordinates unit replenishment with brigade G4 staff and CS service battalion			
	f.	coordinates emergency and supplementary			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	CSS requirements as per SOP.			
	company operates a command post to blan, coordinate and supervise the provision			
a.	personnel administration IAW BTS <u>6002</u> , 'Conduct Personnel Administration'			
b.	transportation services IAW BTS <u>6005</u> , 'Provide Integral Transportation Services'			
c.	maintenance services IAW BTS <u>6007</u> , 'Provide Integral Maintenance Services'			
d.	supply services IAW BTS <u>6009</u> , 'Provide Integral Supply Services'			
e.	food services IAW BTS <u>6010</u> , 'Provide Food Services.'			

6002 B - CONDUCT PERSONNEL ADMINISTRATION

ELEMENT: PERS SECT

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The personnel services section, under the direction of the Adjutant (when not employed forward), is conducting its mission. Replacement personnel are arriving daily. The section has all assigned personnel and equipment, and all required forms, manuals, and SOPs.

TASK STANDARD:

The section integrates replacements and prepares and submits personnel reports and actions while sustaining operations and providing for the discipline, welfare and morale of unit personnel.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	The s	ection receives replacements:			
	a.	welcomes and acclimatizes them to the unit			
	b.	assigns them to subunits IAW the Commanding Officer's priorities			
	c.	briefs on the unit's mission and the current tactical situation before being sent forward.			
2. perfor		Chief Clerk and Orderly Room personnel ninistrative functions:			
	a.	maintain and update personnel records:			
		(1) Personnel Record Resumes			
		(2) pay			
		(3) employment			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards					
		(4)	leave				
		(5)	Personal Emergency Notification information				
b		ameno applic	dments are made to unit records, as able				
c.			t requests for formal amendments to HQ for action.				
	detai		e management support personnel y accounting and other financial				
a			les secure storage for cash and cash vouchers				
b	٠.	distrib	oute pay to personnel				
c.		mainta	ains pay documents				
d	l.	prope	rly process pay allotments.				
4. T		rderly	Room personnel provide postal				
a.		receiv mail	e and distribute the unit's incoming				
b		consol mail	lidate and dispatch the unit's outgoing				
c.		by hig	ment the postal procedures and issues ther formation HQ, including rship of outgoing mail				
d	l .	provid	les limited financial postal services.				
5.	Chapla	ain det	achments provide the following				

	Sub-Tasks and Standards							
service	es:							
	a.	provide moral / spiritual advice on matters affecting the spiritual welfare of the troops						
	b.	provide counseling services and spiritual comfort, particularly to the wounded						
	c.	conduct religious services (eg. Church parades, burials)						
	d.	perform battlefield casualty identification.						
6. manne		ection processes / coordinates, in a timely umentation associated with:						
	a.	service investigations						
	b.	discipline						
	c.	redresses of grievance						
	d.	harassment cases						
	e.	provision of legal services						
	f.	personnel assessments						
	g.	career progression						
	h.	honours and awards.						
	7. The section coordinates unit personnel participation in / access to personnel support programs including:							
	a.	leave, rest and recreational centres						
	b.	entertainment (eg. reading material, films / videos, radio programs, and live shows)						

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	c.	messes and institutes			
	d.	specialist welfare services			
	e.	specialist social work services.			
8. docui	The s mentati	ection coordinates casualty reporting and on:			
	a.	the section processes documentation associated with the reporting of dead, missing, wounded, injured and ill personnel (eg. CF98 Report of Injuries or Immediate Death)			
	b.	the personnel records of dead / missing / evacuated personnel are backloaded with personal effects			
	c.	the Adjutant ensures that subunit commanders write letters to next-of-kin when unit casualties are suffered.			
9. section		tasked by the Commanding Officer, the dinates the unit public information program.			

6003 B/C/D - TREAT AND EVACUATE CASUALTIES

ELEMENT: SECT / PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

An element has sustained casualties requiring treatment and evacuation. The unit's medical assistants (MAs) are available to provide emergency medical treatment and evacuation.

TASK STANDARD:

All casualties are treated and evacuated without causing additional injury. The element provides its own security. Enemy casualties are treated IAW Geneva Conventions.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	Perso	onnel provide emergency first aid.			
2. treatr		element sends a casualty report / request for higher HQ, including:			
	a.	number of casualties			
	b.	location of casualties			
	c.	status of casualties			
	d.	enemy situation.			
3.	The e	element examines casualties:			
	a.	conduct quick visual exam			
	b.	determine which patients are most seriously ill or injured			
	c.	move casualties to secure location.			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
4.	The 6	element treats casualties:			
	a.	determine the general conditions, types of injuries, and need for immediate life-saving measures			
	b.	provide emergency medical treatment to stabilize seriously wounded for transportation to the casualty collection point (CCP)			
	c.	provide first aid for minor injuries or illness			
	d.	initiate casualty tags.			
5.	The 6	element reacts to a casualty situation:			
	a.	the CCP is established			
	b.	all casualties are prioritized and evacuated to the CCP			
	c.	the element's CSM coordinates the evacuation using ambulances and unit vehicles			
	d.	MAs, with support from other available personnel, stabilize casualties IAW basic techniques for life-saving (BTLS)			
	e.	the element HQ coordinates evacuation.			
6. trans		alties requiring further treatment are to the unit medical station:			
	a.	patients are moved as quickly as possible by any available means using covered / concealed routes			
	b.	provide supporting treatment en route.			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	AAs submits a request for aeromedevac and a site is prepared:			
a	best available cover and concealed landing site is identified			
b	landing site security is provided			
c.	number and type of casualties, and patient conditions are reported			
d	casualties are moved to the landing site, and treatment is continued.			
	Evacuation of remains and effects of those killed- n (KIA) is supervised and completed as quickly ble:			
a	casualty report is submitted to higher HQ			
b	custody is taken of military equipment in possession of KIA			
c.	remains and personal effects are evacuated IAW unit SOPs			
d	nominal roll and strength states are updated.			

6004 D - HANDLE PRISONERS OF WAR (PW) / DETAINEES

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has been conducting tactical operations and has captured enemy PWs and / or taken civilians into custody.

TASK STANDARD:

PWs/detainees are processed and guarded so that they are not allowed to disrupt or halt the mission. They are handled IAW international law, and evacuated from danger as soon as possible.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards				
1. PV	Vs / detai	nees are searched:			
a.		eapons and documents (other than nal identity documents) are removed			
b.		ollowing articles are left in the PWs / nees' possession:			
	(1)	helmets, respirators, and other such articles if required for personal protection			
	(2)	personal effects including items used for clothing and feeding			
	(3)	identity documents			
	(4)	badges of rank, nationality and decorations			
c.	taken	by and other items of value are only by order of an officer and upon nce of a receipt			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	d.	PWs / detainees, and items removed from them, are tagged with date, time, location, circumstances of capture and capturing unit, if possible			
	e.	any information of immediate tactical importance is reported to higher HQ			
	f.	no physical or mental coercion is used to secure information.			
2.	PWs etion po	/ detainees are segregated at the company point:			
	a.	senior officers, junior officers, NCMs, civilians and politicians are segregated			
	b.	groups remain segregated during movement to the rear			
	c.	all are restricted from areas where they could obtain information on the mission, strength or future operations.			
3.	Silen	ce is enforced:			
	a.	PW / detainee commanders are prevented from giving orders			
	b.	escape planning is prevented			
	c.	cautioning each other on security is prevented			
	d.	anything PWs/detainees say to each other is reported			
	e.	company members do not talk in front of PWs / detainees except to issue orders or			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		enforce discipline.			
4.	The c	capture is reported to higher HQ.			
5. rear:	Section	ons / platoons speed PWs / detainees to the			
	a.	a company PW collection point is designated			
	b.	segregation is maintained			
	c.	transportation, food, water and emergency clothing is coordinated with higher HQ			
	d.	PWs / detainees too seriously wounded to be evacuated by normal means are turned over to medical personnel for evacuation and treatment, with guards being provided as necessary.			
6.	The c	company safeguards PWs / detainees:			
	a.	removes PWs / detainees from the dangers of the battlefield			
	b.	ensures PWs / detainees arrive safely at the collection point			
	c.	prevents any escapes			
	d.	prevents any abuse of PWs / detainees			
	e.	treats PWs / detainees humanely			
	f.	releases PWs / detainees unharmed if they cannot be held for any reason, including:			
		(1) speed of movement			

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
(2) shortage of guard personnel			
(3) shortage of supplies (food, water)			
(4) certainty of being freed by own forces.			

6005 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL TRANSPORTATION SERVICES

ELEMENT: LOG PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is conducting its primary support mission. Transportation and supply activities must be closely coordinated at the administration company command post.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon successfully carries out unit replenishment, assigned general transport tasks, and maintenance of transport records.

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. IAW	The punit SO	platoon carries part of the unit basic load OPs.			
2. transı	The poort tas	platoon carries out integral administrative ks:			
	a.	provides drivers, when required			
	b.	plans and conducts unit integral troop lifts			
	c.	conducts refueling as required			
	d.	transports the unit quick reaction force, if applicable			
	e.	conducts removal and disposal of garbage			
	f.	transports general cargo			
	g.	picks up salvage			
	h.	provides staging support for unit moves			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	i.	drafts administrative move orders.			
3. vehic		platoon controls the administration for all unit			
	a.	dispatching			
	b.	vehicle records			
	c.	maintenance scheduling			
	d.	replacement vehicles.			
4. the ur		platoon performs the MSE safety function for			
	a.	driver training			
	b.	driver testing			
	c.	maintains drivers records and licenses			
	d.	accident investigation and reporting.			
-	tions a	platoon conducts delivery point (DP) s detailed IAW BTS <u>6006</u> , 'Conduct int Operations.			

6006 D - CONDUCT DELIVERY POINT (DP) OPERATIONS

ELEMENT: ADMIN COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The battalion/battle group is preparing for, or is involved in combat. Brigade and / or division combat service support (CSS) assets are available. It has been directed that provision of routine resupply will be effected through delivery points. Enemy action is possible or expected. Iterations of this task may be performed under radio silence.

TASK STANDARD:

Resupply is successfully conducted without loss of critical supplies or vehicles. DP opening and closing times are met (maximum 30 mins duration).

		Suk	o-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	DP p	lanning	j.			
	a.		mary site is selected and reconnoitred. ite meets the following requirements:			
		(1)	is accessible to main routes			
		(2)	provides firm standing			
		(3)	provides adequate space to prevent traffic congestion			
		(4)	permits dispersion			
		(5)	allows tailgate to tailgate loading			
		(6)	is defensible			
		(7)	has traffic circuit which is easily discernible at night and provides adequate in and out routes			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		(8)	has waiting areas near contact points, which provide camouflage and space for both empty and loaded vehicles			
	b.		V for a crash DP in case of attack is sed and reconnoitred			
	c.	distan	able alternate site within a reasonable ace of the primary site is identified and noitred			
	d.	battal	request is forwarded to the CS service ion or allied support agency with the ving info:			
		(1)	primary DP location			
		(2)	contact point for primary DP location			
		(3)	alternative DP location			
		(4)	contact point for alternative DP location			
		(5)	desired time of opening			
		(6)	suitability of primary and alternate DP for aerial delivery.			
2.	DP d	rill. Pri	or to the DP opening:			
	a.	the D	P site is swept to ensure that it is clear emy			
	b.	listen	ing posts and security are established			
	c.		rehicles are parked and concealed in nated waiting areas			
	d.	routes	s and waiting areas are signed and the			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	location of each commodity is marked			
e.	the reporting centre is established and the contact point(s) are manned			
f.	communications are established, if EMCON measures permit			
g.	the RV for the crash DP is known by all.			
service batta	procedure. After security is established and alion vehicles arrive, the following are followed:			
a.	replenishing vehicles are met at the contact point by a unit representative and directed to the actual DP location			
b.	DP vehicles are directed to unit vehicles			
c.	loads are transferred using:			
	(1) tailgate-to-tailgate (cargo) loading			
	(2) side-to-side loading, eg. pod trucks			
	(3) exchange of vehicles			
d.	the demand for the next day's DP is submitted			
e.	personnel replacements are brought forward			
f.	replenishing vehicles depart the DP			
g.	unit vehicles move to the waiting area, form up in packets and move back to the unit location			
h.	the DP site is cleared and all signs are removed.			

6007 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL MAINTENANCE SERVICES

ELEMENT: MAINT PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is conducting its mission, centralized in the platoon, or decentralized with mobile repair teams (MRT) dedicated to specific subunits in operations.

TASK STANDARD:

Effective maintenance services are given to the supported unit for all land technical equipment. Technical control is retained by the unit Maintenance Officer. Integral repair is performed IAW the Permissive Repair Schedule (PRS).

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.	Repa	ir services are provided:			
	a.	conduct repair tasks IAW CSS BTSs			
	b.	conduct preventive maintenance inspections IAW SOPs			
	c.	conduct repairs IAW unit priorities			
	d.	VOR rate is maintained at the directed level.			
2.	Reco	very services are provided:			
	a.	conduct recovery tasks IAW BTS <u>6008</u> , 'Respond to a Repair / Recovery Request'			
	b.	conduct backloading to Equipment Collection Point			
	c.	conduct route clearance tasks			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	d.	condu	ict unit trail party tasks:			
		(1)	report unit clear of Start Point, Release Point, and other critical points IAW movement orders / SOPs			
		(2)	repair vehicles within time limit IAW movement order / SOPs			
		(3)	recover forward IAW movement order / SOPs			
		(4)	prepare vehicle for recovery by Brigade trail party including picking up co-driver, vehicle trailer, and mission critical equipment, if required			
	e.	Trail _]	party is organized to include:			
		(1)	OIC Trail			
		(2)	repair / recovery vehicles			
		(3)	vehicle to carry casualty vehicle's passenger(s) / cargo / trailer			
		(4)	ambulance.			
3.	Other	maint	enance tasks are provided:			
	a.		equipment to enemy IAW BTS 5008, Equipment and Supplies'			
	b.	condu	ect modifications IAW CFTOs			
	c.	-	de technical inspection and fication services IAW SOPs.			
4.	Work	shop s	upport is provided:			

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
a.	operate maintenance management information systems IAW CFTO/ LMS policies			
b.	maintain effective production control including repair / recovery requests to supporting CS Maintenance Company			
c.	plan unit maintenance workload:			
	(1) advise commander on unit maintenance program			
	(2) manage and allocate resources effectively			
	(3) ensure training and equipment requirements are identified / achieved			
d.	maintain technical library			
e.	provide effective repair parts support including proper scaling, stocking, and accounting procedures			
f.	provide effective tool crib support.			

6008 B - RESPOND TO A REPAIR / RECOVERY REQUEST

ELEMENT: MRT DET

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The mobile repair team (MRT) receives a repair / recovery task, complete with Repair / Recovery request number. Enemy action is a possibility. An NBC environment may exist.

TASK STANDARD:

The MRT successfully repairs / recovers the casualty IAW the Permissive Repair Schedule (PRS). Actions and drills upon encountering enemy or an NBC threat are followed.

		Sul	b-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1.		MRT l	eader responds to a repair / recovery			
reque						
	a.	notif	ies crew to:			
		(1)	de-camouflage the vehicle			
		(2)	parade the vehicle			
		(3)	perform radio check			
		(4)	load ammunition			
		(5)	load rations			
		(6)	load any special equipment required			
	b.	main	ves a tactical briefing from tenance platoon CP, to include main, nate and return routes			
	c.	cond	ucts a map reconnaissance			

	Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
d.	briefs	CP on:			
	(1)	estimated time of arrival (ETA) at casualty site			
	(2)	estimated time of return (ETR)			
e.	briefs	MRT crew regarding:			
	(1)	nature of casualty			
	(2)	routes			
	(3)	passwords			
	(4)	code words			
	(5)	NBC / enemy threat			
	(6)	radio frequencies			
	(7)	signals (hand and light)			
	(8)	noise discipline			
f.	condu	acts a tactical move to the casualty site			
g.	secure	es site:			
	(1)	stops short of objective and keeps MRT vehicle under cover			
	(2)	reconnoitres the site while crew monitors the vehicle radio			
	(3)	challenges crew of casualty vehicle			
	(4)	confirms that the vehicle is the correct casualty			
	(5)	questions crew on tactical situation			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
			at that location			
		(6)	sweeps immediate area if no crew is present			
ŀ	h.		area is secure, brings the MRT e forward and places it under cover			
i	i.	posts	sentries			
j	j.	speak proble	s to crew to discuss the nature of the			
1	k.		es administration company CP of ted time required to complete repair / ery			
1	l.		letes repair / recovery task. Recovery ds to include:			
		(1)	direct tow			
		(2)	suspended tow			
		(3)	extraction			
r	m.	back t	raws and conducts a tactical move to the maintenance platoon lines using selected route.			
			ader carries out the following actions contact:			
a	a.	while	enroute to the casualty:			
		(1)	conducts immediate anti-ambush drill			
		(2)	decides whether or not to complete the repair / recovery using the pre-			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	8	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
		planned alternate route				
	b.	while at the casualty site:				
		(1) consider equipment denial IAW BY 5008, 'Deny Equipment and Supplies'	ΓS			
		(2) depart site, submit contact report and return to unit lines.				
3. admir		MRT leader maintains contact with the on company CP IAW SOPs:				
	a.	calls just prior to departing maintenance platoon location				
	b.	calls on arrival at the casualty site				
	c.	advises the CP of the estimated time to complete the repair / recovery				
	d.	advises the CP of changes in the situation				
	e.	calls when vehicle is repaired and MRT is departing the casualty site	3			
	f.	calls on arrival at the maintenance platoor location.	ı			
	gement es that	MRT leader completes maintenance t information system requirements and the MRT vehicle is prepared for next				

6009 C - PROVIDE INTEGRAL SUPPLY SERVICES

ELEMENT: LOG PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon is conducting its primary support mission. Replenishment is cyclical and is usually conducted on a daily basis between integral and close support organizations.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon successfully achieves all assigned tasks IAW established SOPs. The performance of the logistics platoon is closely coordinated with transportation assets at the administration company command post.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The unit deploys all of its CFFET equipment.			
2. Subunit demands are satisfied and commodities distributed efficiently.			
3. The efficient control of the unit supply accounts is maintained.			
4. Replenishment demands for the unit are consolidated and submitted to the CS service battalion IAW unit reports and returns outlined in SOPs.			
5. Receipt and carriage of materials for the unit is coordinated.			
6. Repairable/re-usable materiel is processed.			
7. Coordination and control of supply services are provided to include:			
a. laundry			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	b.	sanitation			
	c.	technical services			
	d.	local purchase orders (LPO), as applicable.			
8.	Haz	ardous material is controlled IAW SOPs.			

6010 C - PROVIDE FOOD SERVICES

ELEMENT: RATION PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The tactical situation permits the delivery, preparation, and consumption of fresh rations. Set-up and operation of field kitchens are the responsibility of the unit Kitchen Officer (KO).

TASK STANDARD:

Fresh rations and ice are demanded, received, bulk-broken as necessary, and distributed to subunit kitchens. Kitchens provide satisfying meals in a timely fashion. Proper hygiene and sanitation procedures are observed.

	Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The last follows:	CO plans the unit food service requirements			
a.	advises the OC Administration company, through the QM, on unit feeding			
b.	conducts ration and menu planning			
c.	maintains the unit ration accounts			
d.	holds and accounts for the unit's cooking equipment			
e.	demands and maintains the supply of fresh rations			
f.	conducts liaison with the brigade G4 staff on all ration and dietary matters			
g.	provides decentralized field kitchens and fresh ration feeding			

		Sub	-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	h.		icts confirmatory tours of kitchens for ne and messing standards			
	i.		acts bulk-breaking of rations for ait kitchens.			
2.	The k	ritchen	is effectively operated:			
	a.	nutrit	ious and satisfying meals are served			
	b.	Set-uj	p and operation of kitchens includes:			
		(1)	siting of grease traps			
		(2)	siting of wash stands and the pre- drip area for plates are located near the entrance to the kitchen			
		(3)	availability of safety equipment IAW SOPs			
	c.	the sta	andard of hygiene is maintained:			
		(1)	a minimum of one toilet for exclusive use of the cooks is located in close proximity to the kitchen			
		(2)	an ablution stand is available for the exclusive use of the cooks			
		(3)	cooks wash daily			
		(4)	appropriate head-dress is worn while employed in the kitchen			
		(5)	no facial camouflage is applied			
		(6)	normal dress is worn when outside kitchen lines.			

6011 C/D - CONDUCT RUNNING / BATTLE RESUPPLY

ELEMENT: PL / COY

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon / company has been directed to receive supplies or has determined that resupply is necessary. The higher commander may designate a resupply location or the platoon / company may be responsible to coordinate a location with the echelon or supply element. Enemy contact is possible.

TASK STANDARD:

The platoon / company successfully completes resupply operations to replenish its basic load of critical supplies while maintaining security.

	Ħ	rac	ff
Sub-Tasks and Standards	E	NP	Ine
1. The platoon / company enters resupply location from correct direction and on time.			
2. The platoon / company responds properly to the challenge given by the sentry.			
3. The platoon / company moves up and picks up ammo.			
4. The platoon / company moves up and picks up POL.			
5. The platoon WO / CSM carries out concurrent activities at the echelon vehicle:			
a. submits vehicle state and ADREP			
b. breaks down ammo if necessary			
c. exchanges water cans			
d. picks up rations			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
	e.	turns over garbage			
	f.	picks up ADREP items such as personnel equipment, parts, mail, canteen supplies, etc			
	g.	conducts crew replacement if applicable.			
6.	The p	platoon / company maintains security by:			
	a.	minimizing noise			
	b.	vehicle heaters switched off			
	c.	radio speakers switched off			
	d.	headsets stowed inside			
	e.	minimizing use of lights			
	f.	ensuring personnel are properly dressed and equipped when dismounted			
	g.	vehicle engines switched off, if tactical situation permits			
	h.	ensuring a radio watch is maintained at all times			
	i.	ensuring the task was completed within the time given in orders.			
7. were	Appl follow	icable safety and environmental procedures ed.			

6021 B/C - CONSTRUCT A NON-STANDARD BRIDGE (NSB)

ELEMENT: PNR SECT / PL

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (CIRCLE)

CONDITIONS:

The platoon receives orders to construct an MLC 16 timber stringer / timber deck NSB to span over a small gap. The platoon has all necessary personnel and equipment. Construction materials are available locally. Site conditions are good. Enemy interference is possible and site security is not provided.

TASK STANDARD:

Proper design is completed prior to commencement of construction using the NSB design proforma. The platoon constructs the MLC 16 NSB no later than the time specified in orders. Timings include stores off-loading, but not the preparation of bridge approaches.

Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
1. The platoon commander conducts battle procedure IAW BTS <u>1001</u> , 'Battle Procedure.'			
2. Reconnaissance elements conduct a gap reconnaissance IAW BTS 3011, 'Conduct Engineer / Pioneer Reconnaissance,' and BTS 3013, 'Reconnoitre a Gap Crossing Site.'			
3. The platoon moves into suitable Zulu harbour. The platoon establishes task site security and maintains OPSEC throughout IAW BTS 3001, 'Maintains Operations Security.'			
4. If dimensioned lumber or squared wood is to be used, construction materials arrive on site in proper order.			
5. If construction materials are to be cut locally, the platoon employs safe tree felling and cutting procedures			

		Sub-Tasks and Standards	Eff	NPrac	Ineff
(eg. chain saw safety).					
6.		Bridge Commander prepares the site for as necessary (eg. preps banks / abutments).			
	ing tha	Bridge Commander constructs the bridge t acceptable construction methods are used owing conditions are met:			
	a.	bridge is constructed IAW design			
	b.	abutments are behind safe angle of repose (SAR) positions			
	c.	bridge is constructed level			
	d.	structural members are properly connected together			
	e.	safety guidelines are adhered to throughout construction.			
8. IAW	The p SOPs.	platoon submits periodic task status reports			